Axis Empires: Dai Senso!

Rulebook

Game Design by Alan Emrich, Thomas Prowell and Salvatore Vasta Living Rules as of October 1, 2012 © 2011, 2012 Decision Games

Table of Contents

Introduction3
Rulebook Structure3
How to Read the Rules3
Glossary3
Game Components6
Game Scale
Counters (Units, Markers)6
Option Cards8
Core Game Mechanics8
Sequence of Play8
Game Turn Sequence of Play9
©Combined Game Sequence of Play9
O. Seasonal Victory Phase9
0.1 Victory Point Check9
0.1.1 Current Strategic Value9
0.1.2 VP Marker Placement9
0.2 Automatic Victory9
0.3 V-J Day (End Game) Victory10
©0.4 Combined Game Victory10
1. Seasonal Phase10
1.1 Option Card Segment
1.1.1 Option Card Procedure
1.1.2 Option Card Segment Actions
1.1.3 Pending Card Selection
*1.1.4 Soviet Current Card ESV Adjustment12
1.2 Logistics / Partisan Segment
1.2.1 Logistics Markers
1.2.2 Partisan Base Markers
1.3 Replacements Segment
1.3.1 Current Card Seasonal Replacements
1.3.2 Additional Seasonal Replacements
1.3.3 Taking Replacements
1.3.4 Placing Replacements
2. Initial Administrative Phase15
2.1 Political Events Segment
2.2 Support Segment
2.2.1 Return to Base
2.2.2 Beachhead Maintenance
2.2.3 Support Unit and Convoy Marker Placement
2.2.4 Blitz Marker Placement
2.2.5 Beachhead Failure
2.3 Organization Segment
2.3.1 Combination
2.3.2 Fortress and Garrison Conversion
2.3.3 Voluntary Unit Elimination
2.3.4 Breakdown
2.3.5 Detachments
3. Operational Movement Phase23
3.1 Movement 23
3.1.1 Hex-to-Hex Procedure
3.1.2 Port-to-Port Procedure24
3.1.3 Off-Map Box to Off-Map Box Procedure25
3.1.4 Movement Restrictions
3.2 Overruns
4. Combat Phase26
4.1 Blitz Combat Segment
4.1.1 Airdrop
4.1.2 Blitz Combat

4.1.3 Beachhead Landing	27	
4.1.4 Airdrop Landing		
4.1.5 CV Strike Returns		
4.2 Regular Combat Segment		
4.2.1 Attacks	27	
4.2.2 Attack Sequence	28	
4.2.3 CRT Column Shifts	28	
4.2.4 Combat Results	29	
4.2.5 Retreat	29	
4.2.6 Attrition	31	
4.2.7 Advance After Combat		
4.2.8 Exploitation		
4.3 Marker Segment		
5. Reserve Movement Phase		
6. Final Administrative Phase		
6.1 War & Peace Segment	33	
6.1.1 Declare War	33	
6.1.2 Reduce Truce Markers	33	
6.2 Conditional Events Segment	33	
7. End of Game Turn Phase		
7.1 Delay Segment		
7.2 Turn Marker Segment		
Housekeeping Rules	34	
8. Zone of Control (ZOC)		
8.1 Enemy ZOC (EZOC)		
8.2 EZOC Effects		
9. Stacking	35	
9.1 Stacking Restrictions	35	
9.2 Stacking Limits		
10. Supply	36	
10.1 Supply Sources	36	
10.1 Supply Sources 10.2 Supply Line	36 36	
10.1 Supply Sources 10.2 Supply Line 10.3 Supply Effects	36 36 36	
10. Supply	36 36 36 37	
10. Supply	36 36 36 37	
10. Supply	36 36 37 37	
10. Supply	36 36 37 37 37 37	
10. Supply	36 36 37 37 37 37 37	
10. Supply	36 36 37 37 37 37 37 37	
10. Supply	36 36 37 37 37 37 37 37 38 38	
10. Supply	36 36 37 37 37 37 37 38 38	
10. Supply	36363737373737383838	
10. Supply	36363737373737383838	
10. Supply 10.1 Supply Sources 10.2 Supply Line 10.3 Supply Effects 11. Weather 11.1 Weather Areas 11.2 Weather Effects on Combat 11.3 Mud 11.4 Storms 11.5 Snow. 12. War State 12.1 Pre-War Effects 12.2 Limited War Effects	3636373737373738383838	
10. Supply 10.1 Supply Sources 10.2 Supply Line 10.3 Supply Effects 11. Weather 11.1 Weather Areas 11.2 Weather Effects on Combat 11.3 Mud 11.4 Storms 11.5 Snow. 12. War State 12.1 Pre-War Effects 12.2 Limited War Effects 12.3 Total War Effects	36 36 37 37 37 37 37 38 38 38 38 38	
10. Supply	36 36 37 37 37 37 38 38 38 38 38 38	
10. Supply		
10. Supply	363636373737373838383838383939	
10. Supply		
10. Supply 10.1 Supply Sources 10.2 Supply Line 10.3 Supply Effects 11. Weather 11.1 Weather Areas 11.2 Weather Effects on Combat. 11.3 Mud. 11.4 Storms 11.5 Snow. 12. War State 12.1 Pre-War Effects 12.2 Limited War Effects 12.2 Limited War Effects 12.3 Total War Effects 13. Factions 13.1 Factions 13.2 Countries 13.2 Countries 13.2.2 Minor Countries 13.2 Major Countries 13.3 Dependents and Regions 13.3 Dependents 13.3 Regions		
10. Supply		
10. Supply 10.1 Supply Sources 10.2 Supply Line 10.3 Supply Effects 11. Weather 11.1 Weather Areas 11.2 Weather Effects on Combat. 11.3 Mud. 11.4 Storms 11.5 Snow. 12. War State 12.1 Pre-War Effects 12.2 Limited War Effects 12.2 Limited War Effects 12.3 Total War Effects 13. Factions 13.1 Factions 13.2 Countries 13.2 Countries 13.2.2 Minor Countries 13.2 Major Countries 13.3 Dependents and Regions 13.3 Dependents 13.3 Regions		
10.1 Supply Sources 10.2 Supply Line 10.3 Supply Effects 11. Weather 11.1 Weather Areas 11.2 Weather Effects on Combat. 11.3 Mud. 11.4 Storms 11.5 Snow. 12. War State 12.1 Pre-War Effects 12.2 Limited War Effects 12.3 Total War Effects 12.3 Total War Effects 13.1 Factions 13.1 Factions 13.2 Countries 13.2 Major Countries 13.2.1 Major Countries 13.3.1 Dependents and Regions 13.3.1 Dependents 13.3.2 Regions 13.4 Country Status 13.5 Country Alignment		
10.1 Supply Sources 10.2 Supply Line 10.3 Supply Effects 11. Weather 11.1 Weather Areas 11.2 Weather Effects on Combat 11.3 Mud 11.4 Storms 11.5 Snow 12. War State 12.1 Pre-War Effects 12.2 Limited War Effects 12.3 Total War Effects 12.3 Total War Effects 13.1 Factions 13.2 Countries 13.1 Factions 13.2 Countries 13.2.2 Minor Countries 13.3.3 Dependents and Regions 13.3.1 Dependents 13.3.2 Regions 13.4 Country Status 13.5 Country Alignment 13.6 Country Posture	3636363737373738383838393939404041414141	
10.1 Supply Sources 10.2 Supply Line 10.3 Supply Effects 11. Weather 11.1 Weather Areas 11.2 Weather Effects on Combat 11.3 Mud 11.4 Storms 11.5 Snow. 12. War State 12.1 Pre-War Effects 12.2 Limited War Effects 12.3 Total War Effects 12.3 Total War Effects 13.1 Factions 13.2 Countries 13.1 Factions 13.2 Countries 13.2.2 Minor Countries 13.3 Dependents and Regions 13.3.1 Dependents 13.3.2 Regions 13.4 Country Status 13.5 Country Alignment 13.6 Country Posture 13.6.1 Policies	36 36 37 37 37 37 37 38 38 38 38 39 39 39 40 40 41 41 41 42 42	
10.1 Supply Sources 10.2 Supply Line 10.3 Supply Effects 11. Weather 11.1 Weather Areas 11.2 Weather Effects on Combat 11.3 Mud 11.4 Storms 11.5 Snow 12. War State 12.1 Pre-War Effects 12.2 Limited War Effects 12.3 Total War Effects 12.3 Total War Effects 13.1 Factions 13.2 Countries 13.1 Factions 13.2 Countries 13.2.2 Minor Countries 13.3.3 Dependents and Regions 13.3.1 Dependents 13.3.2 Regions 13.4 Country Status 13.5 Country Alignment 13.6 Country Posture	363636373737373838383839393940414141414243	

	44	15.6 Cabinet Shuffle	55
13.8 Additional Country Rules	45	15.7 Ceded Land	55
13.8.1 Ceding Lands		15.8 Chinese Incident	
13.8.2 Creating Minor Countries		15.9 Country Joins [Faction]	
13.8.3 Multi-National Units & Pan-National Units		15.10 Country Resists	
13.8.4 France*13.8.5 Germany		15.11 Coup D'etat	
ook-Up Rules		15.12 Declare War	
•	_	15.13 Delay Reduction	
14.1 Acids Chi		15.14 European Commitment	
14.1 Aid to China		*15.14.1 European Commitment in DS ©15.14.2 European Commitment in AE	
14.2 Airdrop		15.14.2 European Communication In Alexander 15.15 Failure [Commund, Supply]	
14.3 Allied Collapse		15.16 Free Passage	
14.5 Beachhead		15.17 Gekokujo	
14.6 Blitz		15.18 Home Defense	
14.7 Ceded Land		15.19 Influence	
14.8 Chemical Weapons		15.20 International Incident	
14.9 Convoy		15.21 Japan Supports Nationalists	57
14.10 Convoy Strategy		15.22 LOC Damaged	
14.11 Devastation	47	15.23 Military Aid	
14.12 Enforced Peace		15.24 Military Takeover	
14.13 Entry [British, Chinese, Russian, US]		15.25 Minor Country Created	
14.14 European War Markers		15.26 Minor Country Politics	
*14.14.1 Current ESV		15.27 Neutrality	
*14.14.2 European Limited War		15.28 Neutrals Pressured	
14.14.3 German Victory [France Defeated, Russia Defeated *14.14.4 European Total War		15.30 Political Option	
*14.14.5 V-E Day		15.31 Power Shift	
14.15 Failure [Command, Supply]		15.32 Production Success [Type]	
14.16 Free Passage		15.33 Project Success: A-bomb	
14.17 Fujiyama Bomber Production		15.34 Raiders Discovered	
14.18 Hakko Ichiu		15.35 Successful Challenge [Country]	
14.19 I-boat Strategy	49	15.36 Successful Improvements	
14.20 Influence [Axis, Soviet, Western]		15.37 Widespread Attacks	60
14.21 Intensive Bombing		16. Conditional Events	60
14.22 Japanese Government		16.1 Axis Permanent Conditional Events	
14.23 Japanese Mandate		16.1.1 Allied Minor Country Conquest	
14.24 Jet Fighter Production		16.1.2 Axis Minor Country Occupation	
14.26 Lend-Lease		16.1.3 Manchukuo Garrison Check	
		•	
14.27 LOC Damaged	50	16.1.5 Cabinet Dissolution	61
14.27 LOC Damaged		16.1.5 Cabinet Dissolution	
14.27 LOC Damaged	51		61
14.28 Logistics	51 51	16.1.6 Internment	61 61
14.28 Logistics	51 51 51	16.1.6 Internment	61 61 61
14.28 Logistics	51 51 51 51	16.1.6 Internment	61 61 61 61
14.28 Logistics	51 51 51 51 51	16.1.6 Internment	61 61 61 61
14.28 Logistics	51515151515151	16.1.6 Internment	616161616161
14.28 Logistics	51515151515151515151	16.1.6 Internment	
14.28 Logistics		16.1.6 Internment	
14.28 Logistics		16.1.6 Internment	
14.28 Logistics 14.29 Materiel Shortages 14.30 Military Takeover 14.31 Minor Country Production [+1, +2] 14.32 Mobilizing 14.33 Neutrality 14.34 No Occupation 14.35 Oil Embargo 14.36 Partisan Base 14.37 Policy 14.38 Quit India		16.1.6 Internment	
14.28 Logistics 14.29 Materiel Shortages 14.30 Military Takeover 14.31 Minor Country Production [+1, +2] 14.32 Mobilizing 14.33 Neutrality 14.34 No Occupation 14.35 Oil Embargo 14.36 Partisan Base 14.37 Policy 14.38 Quit India *14.39 Reserves [Limited War, Total War]		16.1.6 Internment	
14.28 Logistics 14.29 Materiel Shortages 14.30 Military Takeover 14.31 Minor Country Production [+1, +2] 14.32 Mobilizing 14.33 Neutrality 14.34 No Occupation 14.35 Oil Embargo 14.36 Partisan Base 14.37 Policy 14.38 Quit India *14.39 Reserves [Limited War, Total War] 14.40 Showa Restoration		16.1.6 Internment	
14.28 Logistics		16.1.6 Internment	
14.28 Logistics 14.29 Materiel Shortages 14.30 Military Takeover 14.31 Minor Country Production [+1, +2] 14.32 Mobilizing 14.33 Neutrality 14.34 No Occupation 14.35 Oil Embargo 14.36 Partisan Base 14.37 Policy 14.38 Quit India *14.39 Reserves [Limited War, Total War] 14.40 Showa Restoration		16.1.6 Internment	
14.28 Logistics 14.29 Materiel Shortages 14.30 Military Takeover 14.31 Minor Country Production [+1, +2] 14.32 Mobilizing 14.33 Neutrality 14.34 No Occupation 14.35 Oil Embargo 14.36 Partisan Base 14.37 Policy 14.38 Quit India *14.39 Reserves [Limited War, Total War] 14.40 Showa Restoration 14.41 Suicidal Raiders 14.42 Totsugeki		16.1.6 Internment	
14.28 Logistics		16.1.6 Internment	
14.28 Logistics		16.1.6 Internment	
14.28 Logistics 14.29 Materiel Shortages 14.30 Military Takeover 14.31 Minor Country Production [+1, +2] 14.32 Mobilizing 14.33 Neutrality 14.34 No Occupation 14.35 Oil Embargo 14.36 Partisan Base 14.37 Policy 14.38 Quit India *14.39 Reserves [Limited War, Total War] 14.40 Showa Restoration 14.41 Suicidal Raiders 14.42 Totsugeki 14.43 Truce 14.44 US Markers 14.44.1 Increase USCL 14.44.3 Reduced US Impact		16.1.6 Internment 16.2 Axis Option Card Conditional Events 16.2.1 Army Program 16.2.2 Economic Program 16.2.3 Navy Program 16.2.4 Political Program 16.2.5 Forced Settlement 16.2.6 Japanese Concessions 16.3 Western Permanent Conditional Events 16.3.1 Conquered Western Minor Country Reactivation 16.3.2 Axis or Soviet Minor Country Liberation 16.3.3 US Far Eastern Forces 16.3.4 British Far Eastern Forces 16.3.5 French Response *16.3.6 European Reserves 16.3.7 Reduced US Impact 16.3.8 The West Rises 16.3.9 Aid to Nationalist China 16.3.10 Lend-Lease to Britain 16.3.11 Internment 16.4 Western Option Card Conditional Events	
14.28 Logistics 14.29 Materiel Shortages 14.30 Military Takeover 14.31 Minor Country Production [+1, +2] 14.32 Mobilizing 14.33 Neutrality 14.34 No Occupation 14.35 Oil Embargo 14.36 Partisan Base 14.37 Policy 14.38 Quit India *14.39 Reserves [Limited War, Total War] 14.40 Showa Restoration 14.41 Suicidal Raiders 14.42 Totsugeki 14.43 Truce 14.44 US Markers 14.44.1 Increase USCL 14.44.2 Pacific USCL 14.44.3 Reduced US Impact 14.44.4 US Entry		16.1.6 Internment 16.2 Axis Option Card Conditional Events 16.2.1 Army Program 16.2.2 Economic Program 16.2.3 Navy Program 16.2.4 Political Program 16.2.5 Forced Settlement 16.2.6 Japanese Concessions 16.3 Western Permanent Conditional Events 16.3.1 Conquered Western Minor Country Reactivation 16.3.2 Axis or Soviet Minor Country Liberation 16.3.3 US Far Eastern Forces 16.3.4 British Far Eastern Forces 16.3.5 French Response *16.3.6 European Reserves 16.3.7 Reduced US Impact 16.3.8 The West Rises 16.3.9 Aid to Nationalist China 16.3.10 Lend-Lease to Britain 16.3.11 Internment 16.4 Western Option Card Conditional Events 16.4.1 British Surrender	
14.28 Logistics 14.29 Materiel Shortages 14.30 Military Takeover 14.31 Minor Country Production [+1, +2] 14.32 Mobilizing 14.33 Neutrality 14.34 No Occupation 14.35 Oil Embargo 14.36 Partisan Base 14.37 Policy 14.38 Quit India *14.39 Reserves [Limited War, Total War] 14.40 Showa Restoration 14.41 Suicidal Raiders 14.42 Totsugeki 14.43 Truce 14.44 US Markers 14.44.1 Increase USCL 14.44.2 Pacific USCL 14.44.3 Reduced US Impact 14.44.4 US Entry 14.44.5 US Victory Program		16.1.6 Internment 16.2 Axis Option Card Conditional Events 16.2.1 Army Program 16.2.2 Economic Program 16.2.3 Navy Program 16.2.4 Political Program 16.2.5 Forced Settlement 16.2.6 Japanese Concessions 16.3 Western Permanent Conditional Events 16.3.1 Conquered Western Minor Country Reactivation 16.3.2 Axis or Soviet Minor Country Liberation 16.3.3 US Far Eastern Forces 16.3.4 British Far Eastern Forces 16.3.5 French Response *16.3.6 European Reserves 16.3.7 Reduced US Impact 16.3.8 The West Rises 16.3.9 Aid to Nationalist China 16.3.10 Lend-Lease to Britain 16.3.11 Internment 16.4 Western Option Card Conditional Events 16.4.1 British Surrender	
14.28 Logistics		16.1.6 Internment	
14.28 Logistics 14.29 Materiel Shortages 14.30 Military Takeover 14.31 Minor Country Production [+1, +2] 14.32 Mobilizing 14.33 Neutrality 14.34 No Occupation 14.35 Oil Embargo 14.36 Partisan Base 14.37 Policy 14.38 Quit India *14.39 Reserves [Limited War, Total War] 14.40 Showa Restoration 14.41 Suicidal Raiders 14.42 Totsugeki 14.43 Truce 14.44 US Markers 14.44.1 Increase USCL 14.44.2 Pacific USCL 14.44.3 Reduced US Impact 14.44.4 US Entry 14.44.5 US Victory Program		16.1.6 Internment 16.2 Axis Option Card Conditional Events 16.2.1 Army Program 16.2.2 Economic Program 16.2.3 Navy Program 16.2.4 Political Program 16.2.5 Forced Settlement 16.2.6 Japanese Concessions 16.3 Western Permanent Conditional Events 16.3.1 Conquered Western Minor Country Reactivation 16.3.2 Axis or Soviet Minor Country Liberation 16.3.3 US Far Eastern Forces 16.3.4 British Far Eastern Forces 16.3.5 French Response *16.3.6 European Reserves 16.3.7 Reduced US Impact 16.3.8 The West Rises 16.3.9 Aid to Nationalist China 16.3.10 Lend-Lease to Britain 16.3.11 Internment 16.4 Western Option Card Conditional Events 16.4.1 British Surrender 16.4.2 Nationalist Chinese Surrender 16.4.3 US Surrender 16.4.4 Colonial Liberation	
14.28 Logistics		16.1.6 Internment	
14.28 Logistics 14.29 Materiel Shortages 14.30 Military Takeover 14.31 Minor Country Production [+1, +2]		16.1.6 Internment 16.2 Axis Option Card Conditional Events 16.2.1 Army Program 16.2.2 Economic Program 16.2.3 Navy Program 16.2.4 Political Program 16.2.5 Forced Settlement 16.2.6 Japanese Concessions 16.3 Western Permanent Conditional Events 16.3.1 Conquered Western Minor Country Reactivation 16.3.2 Axis or Soviet Minor Country Liberation 16.3.3 US Far Eastern Forces 16.3.4 British Far Eastern Forces 16.3.5 French Response *16.3.6 European Reserves 16.3.7 Reduced US Impact 16.3.8 The West Rises 16.3.9 Aid to Nationalist China 16.3.10 Lend-Lease to Britain 16.3.11 Internment 16.4 Western Option Card Conditional Events 16.4.1 British Surrender 16.4.2 Nationalist Chinese Surrender 16.4.3 US Surrender 16.4.4 Colonial Liberation 16.4.5 Operation Avalanche	
14.28 Logistics		16.1.6 Internment 16.2 Axis Option Card Conditional Events 16.2.1 Army Program 16.2.2 Economic Program 16.2.3 Navy Program 16.2.4 Political Program 16.2.5 Forced Settlement 16.2.6 Japanese Concessions 16.3 Western Permanent Conditional Events 16.3.1 Conquered Western Minor Country Reactivation 16.3.2 Axis or Soviet Minor Country Liberation 16.3.3 US Far Eastern Forces 16.3.4 British Far Eastern Forces 16.3.5 French Response *16.3.6 European Reserves 16.3.7 Reduced US Impact 16.3.8 The West Rises 16.3.9 Aid to Nationalist China 16.3.10 Lend-Lease to Britain 16.3.11 Internment 16.4 Western Option Card Conditional Events 16.4.1 British Surrender 16.4.2 Nationalist Chinese Surrender 16.4.3 US Surrender 16.4.5 Operation Avalanche 16.5 Soviet Permanent Conditional Events 16.5.1 Conquered Soviet Minor Country Reactivation 16.5.2 Axis or Western Minor Country Liberation	
14.28 Logistics 14.29 Materiel Shortages 14.30 Military Takeover 14.31 Minor Country Production [+1, +2]		16.1.6 Internment 16.2 Axis Option Card Conditional Events 16.2.1 Army Program 16.2.2 Economic Program 16.2.3 Navy Program 16.2.4 Political Program 16.2.5 Forced Settlement 16.2.6 Japanese Concessions 16.3 Western Permanent Conditional Events 16.3.1 Conquered Western Minor Country Reactivation 16.3.2 Axis or Soviet Minor Country Liberation 16.3.3 US Far Eastern Forces 16.3.4 British Far Eastern Forces 16.3.5 French Response *16.3.6 European Reserves 16.3.7 Reduced US Impact 16.3.8 The West Rises 16.3.9 Aid to Nationalist China 16.3.10 Lend-Lease to Britain 16.3.11 Internment 16.4 Western Option Card Conditional Events 16.4.1 British Surrender 16.4.2 Nationalist Chinese Surrender 16.4.3 US Surrender 16.4.5 Operation Avalanche 16.5 Soviet Permanent Conditional Events 16.5.1 Conquered Soviet Minor Country Reactivation 16.5.2 Axis or Western Minor Country Liberation 16.5.3 Russian Far Eastern Forces	
14.28 Logistics		16.1.6 Internment	
14.28 Logistics 14.29 Materiel Shortages 14.30 Military Takeover 14.31 Minor Country Production [+1, +2]		16.1.6 Internment 16.2 Axis Option Card Conditional Events 16.2.1 Army Program 16.2.2 Economic Program 16.2.3 Navy Program 16.2.4 Political Program 16.2.5 Forced Settlement 16.2.6 Japanese Concessions 16.3 Western Permanent Conditional Events 16.3.1 Conquered Western Minor Country Reactivation 16.3.2 Axis or Soviet Minor Country Liberation 16.3.3 US Far Eastern Forces 16.3.4 British Far Eastern Forces 16.3.5 French Response *16.3.6 European Reserves 16.3.7 Reduced US Impact 16.3.8 The West Rises 16.3.9 Aid to Nationalist China 16.3.10 Lend-Lease to Britain 16.3.11 Internment 16.4 Western Option Card Conditional Events 16.4.2 Nationalist Chinese Surrender 16.4.3 US Surrender 16.4.4 Colonial Liberation 16.5.5 Soviet Permanent Conditional Events 16.5.1 Conquered Soviet Minor Country Reactivation 16.5.2 Axis or Western Minor Country Reactivation 16.5.3 Russian Far Eastern Forces *16.5.4 European Reserves	
14.28 Logistics		16.1.6 Internment	

16.5.8 Internment	66
16.6 Soviet Option Card Conditional Events	66
16.6.1 Communist Chinese Surrender	66
16.6.2 Russian Surrender	66
16.7 Internment & Repatriation	66

Introduction

Dai Senso! (DS) is a wargame covering the Asia/Pacific Theater of World War II from 1937 to V-J Day. Players command the Axis, Soviet, and Western factions.

DS is the sister game to *Totaler Krieg!* (*TK*), which covers the European Theater. The two may be played together as a combined game called *Axis Empires* (*AE*).

Rulebook Structure

Design Note: Don't let the length of the rulebook intimidate you. First, you won't need to memorize the whole thing to play, as it's been written so you can look up the rules as you go. Also, the book contains many clarifications, examples, and design notes that appear in gray text boxes just like this one. These should help explain things as you read.

If this is your first time playing DS, we've come up with some training scenarios that will help you learn as you play. Stop here for now and read "Playing DS for the First Time" in the scenario book.

This is the DS "Living Rules" rulebook. Text that appears in red ink (such as you see here) indicates an item that has been corrected or changed since the published DS rulebook.

The DS rulebook is divided into several sections:

- **Introduction:** That's the section you're reading now.
- Game Components: A list of what comes with the game and what the pieces mean.
- Core Game Mechanics Sections 0 7: These rules define the mechanics you will perform during the course of a Game Turn. Not all rules are performed every Game Turn. For ease of reference, rules 0 through 7 are presented in the same numerical order that they are performed in during the Sequence of Play.

Example: if you are playing Step 5 of the Sequence of Play (Reserve Movement), you'll find Rules Section 5 in this book directly corresponds to that step.

- Housekeeping Rules Sections 8 13: These are rules that
 apply throughout the game, but do not fall strictly within the
 Sequence of Play.
- "Look-Up" Rules Sections 14 16: These rules explain the effects of specific markers, Political Events and Conditional Events that may occur. They're called "Look-Up" rules because you should look them up as you play.

Clarification: Look-up events are often italicized and crossreferenced when they appear, to help you find them quicker.

How to Read the Rules

Design Note: Please don't ignore this section – we know you can read and mean no insult. We just want to clarify some of the vernacular before we go any further.

While reading the rules, do *not* infer or imagine more to a rule than is stated in it. When in doubt, interpret strictly. Treat any game event that is impossible to fulfill given current game conditions as a "No Result." That is, nothing happens and the players continue play.

Example: An event instructs a player to remove a Policy marker in a Posture Box, but there is no Policy marker in it at that time. So just ignore that instruction.

If an option card provides instructions based on a certain die roll result, and that card doesn't list what happens if that result does not occur, then the event is treated as a No Result.

Example: The Conditional Event for Western card 17 Oil Embargo instructs you to count the Japanese markers in the Ceded Lands Box and roll one die. The card says: "If the result is less than or equal to the count, apply Military Aid." It does not say what happens if you roll greater than the count — so the default applies, which is to treat it as No Result.

Most rules state items in the singular form. For example, "a Japanese ground unit." Unless a specific number is cited, the rule applies from one to *any* number of the stated item.

Clarification: In other words, "a" doesn't mean "just one." When we say "one," that's when we mean a single item.

"Can" or "cannot" indicates whether or not an action is allowed.

"If" indicates that as long as the criteria are true, then the specified effect and/or restriction described applies. If the listed criteria are not true, then what follows does *not* apply.

"May" indicates the player has the *option* to do something; thus, he has the choice to perform an action, he is *not* forced to do so and may treat the result as No Result instead.

"Must" indicates the player has *no* choice; that action *must* be performed unless otherwise prohibited or impossible to do given current game circumstances. If the player is presented a list of options that he "must" select from, he must select an option that can be performed.

Clarification: You cannot avoid a bad event by picking an option that is impossible to fulfill and then claim a No Result.

A **country's** name indicates the stated item that follows must belong only to that country.

Example: "US ground unit" refers to any ground unit belonging to the US only and not any country belonging to the Western faction.

A **faction's** name indicates the stated item that follows must belong to that faction.

Example: "Western Air units" refers to any Air unit belonging to any country aligned with the Western faction.

A note about *TK*, *DS*, and *AE*: As much as possible, these three games all use the same rules. Where there are exceptions, they will be noted as follows:

*: Rules and counters that are *not* used in the *AE* combined game – i.e., that apply to *DS* only – will be preceded by an asterisk.

©: Rules that apply only to the AE combined game will be preceded by a © symbol.

 \triangle : Rules that are handled differently in *DS* than they are in *TK* are preceded by a triangle. When you are playing *AE*, be sure to use the section that applies to the map in question.

Design Note: If you already know how to play TK, you pretty much already know how to play DS – but look for the asterisks and triangles to see the important differences.

Glossary

Design Note: Even if you do not like reading definitions, we recommend you give this list a glance. Like "How to Read the Rules" above, it will help you understand the game better.

Particularly important terms are <u>underlined</u>. If you forget what these terms mean, refer back here for the definition.

Active: A Minor Country that is not Neutral or Conquered. Major Countries are always considered active.

<u>Air Base</u>: A Land hex containing a City, Port, Road, or Rail, *and* a *supplied* ground unit, Detachment marker, or Logistics marker. *Exception:* A hex containing an enemy Air unit does not have an <u>Air Base</u>.

Clarification: When a Road or Rail hex is used as an <u>Air Base</u>, that Road/Rail does not have to be the one used to trace a supply line.

Example: A supplied Japanese ground unit is in hex w5422, a Road hex. This hex may serve as an <u>Air Base</u> even if it traces a supply line from w5522 back along the road to Hailar (w5625), then along the rails back to Dairen, and eventually back to Japan.

Allied: This indicates something related to either the Soviet and Western factions.

Example: "Allied ground unit" refers to any ground unit belonging to any country aligned with the Soviet or Western faction.

Beachhead Hexside: The hexside faced by the arrow on a Beachhead marker. Units may move and attack across a Beachhead Hexside.

 \triangle <u>Blitz-enabled</u>: If a faction has a Blitz or Totsugeki marker on the map, then all friendly units within two hexes of that marker are said to be Blitz-enabled.

Clarification: That includes all friendly units in the hex containing the Blitz marker itself.

If the Axis faction has an SNLF Beachhead-0 marker on the map, any friendly unit or marker within the hex *containing* that SNLF Beachhead-0 marker is Blitz-enabled.

Clarification: SNLF Beachhead-0 markers do not have a Blitz range like Blitz or Totsugeki markers.

Border: A Country or Dependent "shares a Border" with another Country or Dependent if there is at least one Border Hexside between the two (see the Terrain Key). A Border Hexside *can* be exclusively across a Strait or All-Sea hexside.

Example: Indochina (a French Dependent) and Kiangsu share a Border, as do Malaya (a British Dependent) and the Netherlands East Indies.

△China / Chinese: The rules and cards use the word "China" when referring to *all seven* Chinese Minor Countries collectively: Hopeh, Kansu, Kiangsu, Sinkiang, Szechwan, Tibet, and Yunnan.

The word "Chinese" by itself is used to refer to something that belongs to *any* of the seven Chinese Minor Countries or the Allied Chinese pan-national HQ units.

"Communist Chinese" refers to something that belongs to a Soviet Chinese Minor Country, or a Soviet Chinese pan-national HQ unit.

"Nationalist Chinese" refers to something that belongs to a Western Chinese Minor Country, or a Western Chinese pan-national HQ unit.

Design Note: China was an extremely divided country in World War II. We handle this by treating it as seven smaller countries most of the time.

City: This refers to any hex containing a City, Capital, or Provisional Capital symbol.

Col or Colonial: Ground units with a white unit-type symbol box.

Design Note: Colonial units represent foreign troops. They are treated like regular steps for most purposes, but they have special placement restrictions (1.3.4) and are subject to certain Political Events.

Conquered: An Allied Minor Country that has had the Axis Minor Country Conquest Conditional Event (16.1.1) applied to it and is not currently active.

<u>Control</u>: A hex is under Axis <u>control</u> if any of the following conditions applies:

- Priority 1: The hex is an Allied Strategic Hex (green or red) in a Chinese Country or Russia that contains an Axis Devastation marker.
- Priority 2: The hex contains an Axis ground unit, Detachment, or Logistics marker.
- Priority 3: The hex is in an active Axis Country or one of its Dependents, or in a Conquered Allied Minor Country or one of its Dependents.

A hex is under Allied <u>control</u> if any of the following conditions applies:

- *Priority 1:* The hex is an *Axis* Strategic Hex (orange) in Japan that contains an Allied Devastation marker.
- Priority 2: The hex contains an Allied ground unit, Detachment, or Logistics marker.
- *Priority 3:* The hex is in an *active* Allied Country or one of its Dependents.

Clarification: This last item does not include a hex in a Neutral Country or a Conquered Allied Minor Country.

If more than one faction could potentially claim <u>control</u> of a hex, the faction able to claim the lowest-numbered priority is the faction in control.

Example: A Western Devastation marker is in Nagasaki (e4801), inside Japan, which is an Axis Country. The Western Allies have Priority 1 status in the hex, which trumps the Axis claim of Priority 3 – so the Western faction controls Nagasaki.

Delay Box: A holding box for counters with Delay Stripes that are removed from the map. These counters will cycle back to the map after a delay of one or more Game Turns. A Naval Warfare Delay Box is printed next to the regular Delay Box on the map.

©A unit that is moved to a Delay Box must be placed on the same map that it is being removed from, unless the unit is performing the *European Commitment* Political Event (15.14).

DRM: Die Roll Modifier – a number you add or subtract to a die roll. Modifiers are cumulative. Except for *Delay Results* (7.1), all modified rolls less than 1 or greater than 6 are treated as 1 or 6, respectively.

Clarification: DRMs associated with counters are printed in a square on that counter. Black means it applies to the Axis; green to the West; red to the Soviets; and white to all factions.

Enemy: This indicates something related to one of the other *two* factions.

Clarification: When it's your Faction Turn, everything that doesn't belong to your faction is in your way. So for the Western faction, "enemy ground unit" refers to any ground unit belonging to the Axis or Soviet faction.

*ESV: European Strategic Value – a measure of Allied success fighting the war in Europe against Nazi Germany.

Exp or **Expeditionary:** A Minor Country one-step unit that is not subject to restrictions regarding cooperation with other friendly Minor Country units.

EZOC: Enemy Zone of Control – one of the six hexes adjacent to an enemy unit (8.1).

Faction: One of the three "sides" in the game – the Axis, the West and the Soviet.

Force Pool: A holding box for a faction's counters not in play.

©Each faction has a *TK Force Pool* (for Europe) and a *DS Force Pool* (for the Pacific).

© Clarification: Units are placed in the Force Pool that corresponds to their location. For example, a unit that enters play from a DS card or that is removed from a DS map is placed in the faction's DS Force Pool – not the TK Force Pool – unless specifically directed otherwise.

Friendly: This indicates something that belongs to the same faction.

Clarification: In other words, it's the opposite of "enemy" above. Axis ground units are friendly to the Axis faction.

Hex: Hexes are identified by hex numbers. An "e" stands for the East Map (which has Hawaii on it) and "w" stands for the West Map (which has India on it).

Example: Tokyo is in hex e4904.

There are two types of hexes, *All-Sea* and *Land*. When the word "hex" appears by itself, it refers to any hex on the map.

- All-Sea hex: A hex that contains *only* water (dark blue in color).
- Land hex: A hex that contains any amount of land in it, including hexes that have both land and water. Note that an All-Sea hex with a Beachhead marker is not considered a Land hex.

Home Country City or **Home Country Port:** A City or Port in a Land hex of a unit's respective Home Country.

A Western Off-Map Box can also serve as a Home Country Port for *any* Western unit – no supplied ground unit, Detachment marker, or Logistics marker is required.

Example: Cities and Ports in Japan are Home Country Cities and Ports for Japanese units. Cities and Ports in Korea (a Japanese Dependent) are not.

Island: *One* Land hex surrounded entirely by All-Sea, Strait, or Beachhead hexsides.

Example: For game purposes, Guadalcanal (e2611) is an Island. Rabaul (e2808) is not.

Map: The play area. ©In a combined game, *DS* and *TK* are considered separate "maps."

Marker: A counter that is *not* a ground unit or support unit.

Multi-Zone Port: A Port that is considered to be in more than one Naval Zone at the same time (for example, e3408 Truk).

Clarification: Regardless of where a Port might be on the map, only those Ports designated as Multi-Zone Ports are considered as such.

<u>Naval Base</u>: A Land hex containing a Port and a *supplied* ground unit, Detachment marker, or Logistics marker.

A Western Off-Map Box can also serve as a <u>Naval Base</u> for *any* Western Unit – no supplied ground unit, Detachment marker, or Logistics marker is required.

Naval Base Restrictions:

- A hex containing an enemy Air unit does not have a Naval Base.
- An All-Sea hex containing a Beachhead marker does not have a <u>Naval Base.</u>
- An Ice hex affected by Snow does not have a Naval Base.

Example: If Midway (e4519) contains a supplied British ground unit and an unsupplied US ground unit, it is a British <u>Naval Base</u>, but not a US <u>Naval Base</u>. That's because the US unit is not supplied.

The Western US Box is a Western <u>Naval Base</u> for any Western unit. Since it is an Off-Map Box, it does not require a supplied ground unit.

Naval Zone: An area consisting of All-Sea hexes and coastal Land hexes as defined by a Naval Zone border. A Port, City, unit, or marker is considered in a Naval Zone if it is in any hex in that Naval Zone's defined area. Some coastal Land hexes on the map may be in more than one Naval Zone at the same time.

Naval Zones are considered adjacent to each other if they share a Naval Zone border hexside.

Example: Find the Bay of Bengal Naval Zone Box on the map. The All-Sea hexes in this Naval Zone are fairly obvious. Other examples of hexes in the Naval Zone are Rangoon (w4015) and Madras (w3809). Less obvious, but still in the Bay of Bengal are Telukbetung (w2818) and Singapore (w3218). Bandung (w2719) is in both the South China Sea and Southeast Indian Ocean Naval Zones.

The Bay of Bengal Naval Zone is adjacent to the South China Sea Naval Zones, but not the Arafura Sea Naval Zone.

Naval Zone Box: Every Naval Zone has three Naval Zone Boxes: *On Station, Convoys*, and *Used*. These boxes are used to show the status of support units and markers within that Naval Zone.

Clarification: Note that Naval Zone Boxes are printed over All-Sea hexes on the map. Those hexes are still in play! We've tried to place the boxes so that crowding shouldn't occur very often, but when it does, take care to place your pieces so that you know what is where.

Neutral: A Minor Country that is not Active or Conquered.

△**Off-Map Box:** The boxes on the map labeled Western US, Panama Canal, French Polynesia, Europe/Africa, and Eastern Europe.

An Off-Map Box belongs to one of the Allied factions; *only* units friendly to that faction can enter a particular Off-Map Box.

An Off-Map Box is considered part of a Naval Zone if a unit is able to enter or exit that Naval Zone using the Port-to-Port movement procedure (3.1.2), as stated in that Off-Map Box.

Example: The Western US Box is part of the Gulf of Alaska and Northeast Pacific Naval Zones, but not the Central Pacific Naval Zone.

An Off-Map Box is considered adjacent to another Off-Map Box if a unit can move between them using the Off-Map Box to Off-Map Box movement procedure (3.1.3), as stated in the Boxes.

Example: The Western US Box is adjacent to the Panama Canal Box, but not the Europe/Africa Box.

Open Port: A hex has an <u>Open Port</u> for a faction if at least *one* of the following applies:

- It is a Port hex containing a friendly ground unit, Airdrop, Detachment, or Logistics marker.
- It is a Port hex in a friendly, active Country.
- It is an All-Sea hex containing a friendly Beachhead marker.
- It is an Off-Map Box identified as having an Open Port.

Clarification: Unlike with <u>Air Bases</u> or <u>Naval Bases</u>, the unit or marker does not have to be supplied. Note also that <u>control</u>, by itself, does not create an <u>Open Port</u>.

Example: If the Netherlands East Indies is a Western Minor Country, then Batavia (w2819) does not require a friendly unit or marker to be a Western <u>Open Port</u>. If the Axis turns the Netherlands East Indies into a Conquered Minor Country, it would <u>control</u> Batavia for Victory Point Checks but could not use it as an <u>Open Port</u> unless it contained an Axis ground unit, Airdrop, Detachment, or Logistics marker.

Hong Kong (a British Dependent in w4222) requires a friendly unit or marker to be a Western <u>Open Port</u>, even for British units. That's because Dependents are never considered to be "a friendly Country" (13.3.1).

<u>Open Port</u> Restrictions: A hex does not have an <u>Open Port</u> if any of the following applies:

- The hex contains an enemy ground or air unit, or enemy Airdrop, Detachment, or Logistics marker.
- The hex is an Ice hex affected by Snow.
- There is an enemy Fleet unit in the On Station Box of the Naval Zone containing the hex.

• There is an enemy Air unit in the On Station Box of the Naval Zone containing the hex, and the hex is within three hexes of a Naval Base of that same enemy faction. (A Naval Base in an Off-Map Box is never considered to be within three hexes of any hex, no matter how close the Off-Map Box is to that hex.) This restriction applies only for an activity performed within the specific Naval Zone containing the enemy Air Force unit.

For Multi-Zone Ports, the last two restrictions only apply to a Naval Zone containing an enemy Fleet or Air Force unit.

Example: The British Sing fortress unit and a Japanese Air Force unit are both in Singapore (w3218, a Multi-Zone Port). Singapore is not a Western Open Port, in either of the Bay of Bengal or South China Sea Naval Zones.

Now let's say the Japanese Air Force unit is in the South China Sea On Station Box instead, and there's a supplied Japanese ground unit in Kota Bharu (w3417), making it a Japanese Naval Base. In this case, Singapore is not a Western Open Port in the South China Sea because it is within three hexes of Kota Bharu, but it is an Open Port in the Bay of Bengal Naval Zone, because only the South China Sea Naval Zone Box contains an enemy support unit.

If there is a Western Sub Fleet in the South China Sea On Station Box, then all Ports in the South China Sea Naval Zone are not Axis <u>Open Ports</u>.

Design Note: An enemy support unit in an On Station Box represents the interdiction of the sea lanes and ports within that Naval Zone. Air Force units must operate within range of their <u>Naval Bases</u>. Fleet units, with their much greater range, patrol the entire area.

Open Port Mutual Interdiction:

If one faction's hex cannot be considered an <u>Open Port</u> or <u>Naval Base</u> directly because of an enemy faction's <u>Open Port</u> or <u>Naval Base</u>, *and* the situation exists directly in reverse (i.e., it involves the same hexes for each faction), then neither faction has an <u>Open Port</u> in their respective hex.

Clarification: Don't worry if this doesn't make sense to you right now. This is a very rare event, and you'll recognize it if you encounter it in play.

PAC or **Policy Affected Country:** A Country (and all its Dependents) affected by a Policy marker in the Posture Display.

Played: An option card is considered "played" if is a faction's Current Card, or was a faction's Current Card in an earlier season in the game.

Port: "Port" refers to any hex containing a port symbol.

Posture: A Country's current status as a belligerent, Policy Affected Country (PAC), or Truce Affected Country (TAC).

Range: Count ranges by including the destination hex, but not the origin hex.

Example: There is a British <u>Air Base</u> in Dacca (w4313), and the Western faction wishes to place an air unit with a range of three hexes in Lashio (w4216). This is allowable. Chiengmai (w4016) is out of range.

△Restricted Waterway: Each of the following is considered a Restricted Waterway: Batavia (w2819), Hakodate (e5205), Nagasaki (e4801), Singapore (w3218), and Toyohara (e5605).

TAC or **Truce Affected Country:** A Country (and all its Dependents) affected by a Truce marker in the Posture Display.

Turn (<u>Seasonal Turn</u> / Non-seasonal Turn): A Game Turn highlighted with a red box on the Turn Track is a <u>Seasonal Turn</u> (every Mar-Apr, May-June, Aug-Sept, and Nov-Dec Game Turn). All other Game Turns are Non-seasonal Turns.

Unit: A counter that is a ground or support unit.

USCL: United States Commitment Level – a measure of America's wartime productivity.

VP: Victory Point – a measure of a faction's success in the game.

Game Components

A complete copy of *DS* includes these components:

- This Rulebook
- A Scenario Book
- Two 22 x 34 inch maps
- Two countersheets each with 280 counters (560 total)
- Three decks of option cards (one for each faction the Axis deck has 76 cards, the Western deck has 80 cards, and the Soviet deck has 44 cards)
- Three Force Pool Displays (one for each faction)
- Three Player Aid Cards (one for each faction)
- One Support Unit & Convoy Marker Aid Card
- One European War Display
- One six-sided die

Game Scale

ΔA hex on the map is about 120 to 300 miles across, depending on latitude. Off-Map Boxes represent areas Axis forces had no true capability of interdicting or occupying.

A Turn represents from 30 to 60 days.

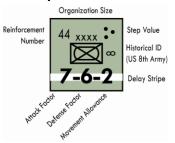
Each year consists of four seasons:

- **Spring** begins with the Mar-Apr turn.
- Summer begins with the May-June turn.
- Autumn begins with the Aug-Sept turn.
- Winter begins with the Nov-Dec turn.

Counters (Units, Markers)

There are two types of counters: *units* and *markers*. Any counter that is *not* a ground unit or support unit is a marker.

Sample Ground Unit



Ground units: These units represent combat formations from battalions to armies. Ground units (and *only* ground units) always have these three numbers printed along the bottom of their counter: *Attack Factor, Defense Factor*, and *Movement Allowance*.

Clarification: Other counters may be considered "units," but only the ones with three numbers on the bottom are ground units.

Ground units may also have this information:

• **Step Value** indicates the number of steps in a unit. The number of steps in a unit is shown as one, two, or three dots or squares printed in the upper-right corner of the counter.

Clarification: Most ground units use dots to indicate their Step Value. Garrison and fortress units use squares to indicate they are limited in their ability to organize or break down during the Organization Segment (2.3).

- Organization Size "xxxx" indicates an army. "xxxxx" represents a War Zone (a Chinese army group). All armies and army groups are multi-step units.
- **Historical ID** (located to the right of the unit-type symbol box) is a unit's historical identity.
- Nationality ID (located to the left of the unit-type symbol box) indicates which Minor Country or Faction the counter belongs to.

Clarification: Major Country units do not have Nationality IDs on them, except for Japanese Kwantung units.

- Unit-Type Symbol indicates the unit type. There are four ground unit types:
 - ⇒ *Infantry* units have an infantry, garrison, cavalry, airborne, or marine symbol.



Armor units have armor, mechanized, or cav-mech symbols. Armor is sometimes referred to as tank, but there is no difference in game play.



 \Rightarrow HO units have an HO symbol.



⇒ Fortress units have an empty box or trench lines symbol.

Those with trench lines are referred to as Port-a-Fort units.



Clarification: Note that the unit-type symbol is what matters when determining a unit type, and not the individual unit components. Thus, a three-step Western HQ unit is not an armortype unit, even though an armor-type unit was used to form it.

- Unit-Type Symbol Color indicates a "special" unit type. Not all unit-type symbols are colored; those units are normal units.
 - \Rightarrow White indicates a colonial unit (1.3.3.5).
 - \Rightarrow *Other* indicates an elite unit (2.3.4.3).

Sample Support Units



Support units: These units represent concentrations of air and naval activity. There are two categories of support units: *Air* and *Fleet*. They are further broken down into several different types:

- Air Force units have an aircraft icon. All Air Force units have Escort Troop Convoy markers on their backs.
- Bomber units have a bomber aircraft icon, down-arrow symbol (indicating they cannot contest support unit placement), and DRM symbol. All Bomber units have Devastation markers on their backs.
- CV Strike units have an aircraft icon. A CV Strike unit has its CV Fleet unit on the front.
- Interceptor units have an aircraft icon and up-arrow symbol (indicating they can only contest support unit placement).
- CV Fleet units have a carrier ship icon. A CV Fleet unit has its CV Strike unit on the back.
- **Surface Fleet** units have a battleship icon. All Surface Fleet units have Escort Troop Convoy markers on their backs.
- Sub Fleet units have a submarine icon, down-arrow symbol (indicating they cannot contest support unit placement), and DRM symbol.

Markers: These counters are used to mark various game functions. Here are some of the important ones you'll encounter:

- **Airdrop** markers have a parachute symbol. All Airdrop markers are found on the backs of their parent airborne ground units.
- Beachhead markers represent invasion beachheads and temporary ports. These markers have arrow, port, aircraft, and Limited Stacking icons on the front. They have arrow, port, and battleship icons on the back.
- Convoy markers represent merchant marine activity. These
 markers have a transport ship icon. They may read Supply on one
 side and Troop on the other. There are four types of Convoy
 markers: Standard Convoy markers, Axis and Soviet Scratch
 Convoy markers, the US Fleet Train Convoy marker, and Escort
 Troop Convoy markers (found on the backs of Air Force and
 Surface Fleet support units).

Clarification: Standard Convoy markers do not have a Delay Stripe. The three other types of Convoy markers do.

When the rules refer to "a Troop Convoy marker," they mean any such Convoy marker. When they refer to "a Supply Convoy marker," they likewise mean any such marker – including the inherent Axis or Western Supply Convoy markers found in a number of Naval Zones.

• **Detachment** markers represent small garrisons to keep supply lines open and port facilities operational. They have a pennant flag symbol. All Detachment markers are found on the backs of certain infantry ground units.

Other Counter Information: Both units and markers may contain these additional bits of information:

- **Delay Stripe** indicates the counter must be placed in a Delay Box when it is removed from the map.
- Range is the maximum distance in hexes that an Air unit or A-bomb marker can be placed from an <u>Air Base</u>. For HQ units, it is the maximum distance the HQ can provide HQ Support. For Airdrop markers, it is the maximum distance in hexes the marker may be placed from its parent airborne unit. For Failure, Blitz, and Totsugeki markers, it is their radius of effect.
- Reinforcement Letter, Number, or Asterisk. If this is a number, it matches the option card that brings this counter into play. This will help you find the counters faster while playing. If this is a letter, it matches a Political or Conditional Event that brings the counter into play. Here's what some of those mean:

- ⇒ *ASR*: the counter can be brought into play with an *Allies Support Resistance* Political Event (15.1).
- △F: the counter belongs to France on the DS map.
 © Clarification: This is important only in the combined game, where it's necessary to distinguish these units from Vichy units on the TK map.
- ⇒ *N*: the counter can be brought into play with the *Minor Country Created* Political Event (15.25).
 - Clarification: The "N" stands for a "new" Minor Country.
- ⇒ ®: the counter is a variant counter not used in standard DS or AE play.

Clarification: The ® stands for "Random Campaign Game." You can set aside all ® counters for now. The rules for these counters are included in the Axis Empires Expansion Kit, which will be available separately. We've included them here to give you a taste of some of the cool things you'll find in the Kit, and also to make the most efficient use of available space.

If this is an asterisk, it means this counter is not used in the AE combined game.

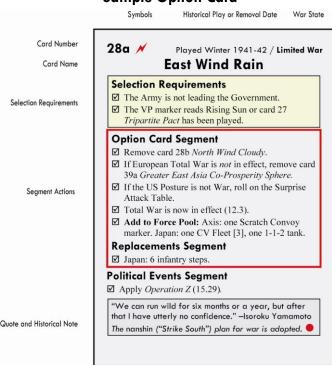
 \triangle British, French, Russian, and US counters in *DS* have an earmark under their Reinforcement Code to help you keep these pieces separate from those in *TK*.

Option Cards

There are three sets of option cards included with the game – one set each for the Axis, Soviet, and Western factions.

Each card has a color that indicates its **War State**. *Blue* cards are *Pre-War* cards. *Gray* cards are *Limited War* cards. *Magenta* cards are *Total War* cards. A card's War State is also indicated by text in the upper right corner.

Sample Option Card



Owning Faction Indicator

Cards may have the following information:

- Card Number matches the Reinforcement Number printed on counters. Not all cards have a unique number. Some numbers may be duplicated and have a letter added to them. Card numbers that appear in *red* are used in one-map scenarios only.
- Symbols identify those cards with special properties; not all cards have these marks.
 - ⇒ A lightning bolt () symbol indicates a Blitz card. A Blitz card's Blitz Value is determined by counting the number of lightning bolts on the card.
 - ⇒ A hammer-and-wrench (**%**) symbol indicates the card is a *Rearmament* card.
 - ⇒ A set of circular arrows (□) indicates the card is a recyclable card.
 - ⇒ A medal (⁸⁄₃) symbol indicates the card is a Soviet War Progress card.
 - ⇒ On *Soviet* cards only, a number in a black circle indicates the card's Production Value (©1.1.3.3, *1.1.4).
 - \Rightarrow A © symbol indicates the Card has a counterpart in the *TK* deck that must be paid attention to in *AE*.
- Card Name indicates its name. Not all cards have unique names.
- **Selection Requirements** lists the conditions that must be in effect to select the card as a Pending Card (1.1.3).
- **Segment Actions** indicate actions that must be performed during certain Segments of the Turn, such as the *Option Card Segment* or *Conditional Events Segment*. Events that are surrounded by a red border are performed in <u>Seasonal Turns</u> only. Events that are not surrounded by a red border are performed each Turn.
- Quote and Historical Note provided for historical flavor only.
- Owning Faction Indicator identifies which of the three factions owns the card.
- **Historical Play or Removal Date** indicates when the card was played or removed from the deck historically. (*Exception:* some cards use this area to indicate they are only used for one-map scenarios.)

Clarification: Players do not have to play cards in historical order – but doing that the first time you play DS isn't a bad idea, just to see what's going on.

Core Game Mechanics

Sequence of Play

The game is played in a series of consecutive Game Turns. Each Game Turn consists of three *Faction Turns*: Axis, Western, and Soviet. The faction whose Faction Turn is currently in progress is referred to as the *phasing faction*.

Each Faction Turn is divided into *Phases*, which may be sub-divided into *Segments*. Players perform actions in a sequence of Phases and Segments known as the Sequence of Play. Once a phasing faction finishes a Phase or Segment and moves to the next, it cannot go back.

Important: The Seasonal Victory Phase and each faction's Seasonal Phase are performed *only on <u>Seasonal Turns</u>* (i.e. the first turn of each Season). These Phases have a red border around them in the Sequence of Play to match the red border that appears around <u>Seasonal Turns</u> on the Turn Track. On all other Non-seasonal Turns, each faction begins its Faction Turn with the Initial Administrative Phase.

Design Note: The Sequence of Play is very procedure-oriented. You'll need to follow it closely to perform actions in their proper order.

Game Turn Sequence of Play

0. Seasonal Victory Phase

0.1 Victory Point Check

A. Axis Faction Turn

1. Seasonal Phase

- 1.1 Option Card Segment
- 1.2 Logistics / Partisan Segment
- 1.3 Replacements Segment

2. Initial Administrative Phase

- 2.1 Political Events Segment
- 2.2 Support Segment
- 2.3 Organization Segment

3. Operational Movement Phase

- 4. Combat Phase
 - 4.1 Blitz Combat Segment
 - 4.2 Regular Combat Segment
 - 4.3 Marker Segment

5. Reserve Movement Phase

6. Final Administrative Phase

- 6.1 War & Peace Segment
- 6.2 Conditional Events Segment

B. Western Faction Turn

The Western faction player performs Phases 1-6 above.

C. Soviet Faction Turn

The Soviet faction player performs Phases 1-6 above.

7. End of Game Turn Phase

- 7.1 Delay Segment
- 7.2 Turn Marker Segment

©Combined Game Sequence of Play

In AE, the Game Turn Sequence of Play remains exactly the same: after performing the Seasonal Victory Phase (if necessary), the Axis faction takes its Faction Turn on both maps, followed by the Western faction and the Soviet faction.

Events during a particular segment or phase are performed in *TK* first and then in *DS*.

Clarification: Your faction only gets one combined Faction Turn on both maps, and generally, play can happen at the same time on both maps. But whenever there is confusion about sequencing, remember "Germany First."

O. Seasonal Victory Phase

Important: This Phase is performed on <u>Seasonal Turns</u> only.

0.1 Victory Point Check

A Victory Point Check is performed at the beginning of every <u>Seasonal Turn</u>. A Final Victory Point Check is also performed at the end of the game.

0.1.1 Current Strategic Value

Step 1: Count the number of all Soviet and Western Strategic Hexes under Axis <u>control</u> plus the number of *Allied Collapse* markers in the Strategic Warfare Box.

Step 2: Subtract the number of Axis Strategic Hexes under Allied <u>control</u> plus the number of *Military Takeover* markers in the Strategic

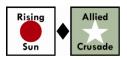
Warfare Box. *Exception:* Axis Strategic Hexes in an active Policy Affected Country (13.6.1) are *not* counted.

Example: The Netherlands East Indies is an active Western Minor Country, but a Quarantine Policy marker is in the US and Western Minors Posture Box. Thus, Batavia (w2819), an Axis Strategic hex under Western control, is not counted.

*Step 3: If an Axis Strategic Hex *inside Japan* is under Allied <u>control</u>, add the number of the Box occupied by the Current ESV marker on the Current ESV Track. *Exception:* If the Current ESV is a *negative* number – add 0 instead.

*Design Note: In DS, the Axis faction scores a higher Strategic Value if the Allies send fewer forces to Europe than they did historically.

The resulting sum is the Current Strategic Value.



0.1.2 VP Marker Placement

Place the VP marker in the Box on the VP Track that corresponds to the Current Strategic Value, on the side indicated (either Rising Sun or Allied Crusade) by that Box.

Do *not* flip the VP marker when the Current Strategic Value is +1 or +2. Just place the VP marker in the 0 Box and leave it on whichever side was already face-up.

Clarification: If the Current Strategic Value is 0, the VP marker goes in the 1 VP Box on its Allied Crusade side.

Example: It is the Victory Point Check of the Aug-Sept 1940 <u>Seasonal Turn</u> and the VP marker reads Allied Crusade. The Axis player has ground units occupying two Allied Strategic Hexes (Peiping and Nanking). The sum is two in favor of the Axis, or +2. The VP marker is placed in the 0 VP Box and left, unchanged, on its Allied Crusade side.

In the next Victory Point Check (Nov-Dec 1940 <u>Seasonal Turn</u>), there are now Axis ground units in three Allied Strategic Hexes: Peiping, Nanking, and Saigon. The sum is three in favor of the Axis, or +3. The VP marker is placed in the 1 VP Box on its Rising Sun side.

△The Axis Japanese Mandate marker: If the Axis Japanese Mandate marker is on the VP Track, the Rising Sun VP marker cannot be placed in a VP Box to the right of (i.e., higher than) the one containing the Japanese Mandate marker. If the VP marker would be placed to the right, move it back to the VP Box containing the Japanese Mandate marker.

0.2 Automatic Victory

A player may end the game before the final Turn by achieving an Automatic Victory. An Automatic Victory may occur in these ways:

• **Asian Domination:** If the VP marker is placed in the Automatic Victory Box on the VP Track during *Total War*, the side indicated on the VP marker wins an Automatic Victory.

Clarification: While the Japanese Mandate marker is on the VP Track, it is impossible for the Axis player to win an Automatic Victory in this fashion.

©*Exception:* If the Current Strategic Value on the DS map is -17 or less, place the Allied Crusade VP marker in the 4 VP Box instead. Play on the DS map ends immediately, but the game may continue on the TK map.

• **Japanese Surrender:** If the *Allied Crusade* VP marker is placed in the 2 VP Box during *Limited War*, the Allies wins an Automatic Victory.

Design Note: This would require the Allies to occupy substantial parts of Japan during Limited War.

• *European Theater Collapse: If the Current ESV is 5, the game ends in an Axis Victory.

©If an Axis faction wins an Automatic Victory during Total War on either map, the *AE* combined game ends with an Axis Victory. If the Allied factions win an Automatic Victory during Limited War on either map, the *AE* combined game ends with an Allied Victory.

△0.3 V-J Day (End Game) Victory

If neither side achieves an Automatic Victory during play, the game ends when the V-J Day marker is removed from the Turn Track (14.37). **Exception:** In the AE combined game, the game does not end until both the V-E *and* V-J Day markers are removed from the Turn Track.

When the game ends, a Final Victory Point Check is performed. To do this, use the Victory Point Check procedure above with the following additions:

- A Strategic Hex is considered under Axis <u>control</u> if it is in a Neutral Country containing a Pro-Axis Influence marker and *no* Allied ground unit is in Tokyo (e4904).
- A Strategic Hex is considered under Allied <u>control</u> if it is in a Neutral Country containing a Pro-Soviet or <u>Pro-West Influence</u> marker and an Allied ground unit is in Tokyo.

Example: It is the Final Victory Point Check of a hard-fought game. The Netherlands East Indies contains a Pro-West Influence marker in Batavia, and there is a US ground unit in Tokyo. Thus, the Strategic Hexes in the NEI are included in the Allied Strategic Hex count.

After determining the Final Strategic Value, compare the number of Victory Points earned by each of the two sides – the Axis faction and the combined Allied factions.

Design Note: No provision has been made for determining individual Allied victory levels. The two Allied players in a three-player game must equally share the credit for an Allied victory and the blame for an Allied defeat. The time spent after the game arguing about who did what is known as "The Cold War."

The Axis faction earns 1 VP:

- for each VP in the box containing the *Rising Sun* marker on the VP Track.
- for each VP in the box containing the *Japanese Mandate* marker on the VP Track.

Clarification: Note that the Axis faction does not earn any VPs for the Hakko Ichiu marker being on the VP Track.

The Allied factions collectively earn 1 VP for each VP in the box containing the *Allied Crusade* marker on the VP Track.

The side with the most VPs wins. If the VP scores are tied at the end of the game, the Axis faction wins.

Clarification: Note that the Axis Tide and Allied Crusade markers can't be on the VP Track at the same time. Most games will come down to whether the Allied factions can score more Allied Crusade VPs than the Axis has Japanese Mandate VPs. Historically, the final score was a 2-2 tie – Allied Crusade 2 vs. Japanese Mandate 2.

©0.4 Combined Game Victory

The AE combined game ends with an Axis win if an Axis faction scores an Automatic Victory on either map. The Allied factions win if they score an Automatic Victory on both maps.

Otherwise, play both *TK* and *DS* to conclusion. Play stops on a map when the V-E Day or V-J Day marker is no longer on its Turn Track while Total War is in effect.

Example: The V-E Day marker is removed from the TK map in the May-June 1945 turn, but the war is still going in the Pacific. All play stops on the TK map – the Allies cannot then start sending stuff from that map to the Pacific.

At the end of the game, determine the Final Strategic Value (0.3) on each map. The Axis factions add their VP scores on the *TK* and *DS* maps to determine their combined VP score. Add any *Bonus VPs* earned for placing the V-E or V-J Day marker back on the Turn Track and extending play on a map (14.45).

Clarification: Do not add any VPs for VP Boxes containing the SS Europa (TK) or Hakko Ichiu (DS) markers – you don't score any VPs for those.

Likewise, the Allied factions add their VP scores on the *TK* and *DS* maps to determine their combined VP scores.

The side with the most VPs wins. If the VP scores are tied at the end of the game, the Axis faction wins.

Clarification: Remember the Allied factions cannot earn more than 4 VPs on a map. That means you can't beat up exclusively on just one of the Axis factions and expect to win the game.

Example: It is Nov/Dec 1945 and the V-J Day marker is removed. Because the V-E Day marker was removed earlier, the game is now over. On the TK map, the Axis Tide marker was planted in the 2 VP box, and the Axis faction earned 1 Bonus VP for returning the V-E Day marker to the Turn Track. When the V-E Day marker was finally removed, the Allied Crusade VP marker was in the 4 VP box. On the DS map, both the Japanese Mandate and Allied Crusade VP markers are in the 2 VP Box on the VP Track. That means the final score is Allies 6, Axis 5, so the Allied factions win.

1. Seasonal Phase

Important: This Phase is performed on <u>Seasonal Turns</u> only.

1.1 Option Card Segment

Each player should designate a space on the table for his *Current Card* (which is face up) and *Pending Card* (which is face down). It must be clear to all players at all times which cards are Current Cards and which are Pending Cards.

Players are not allowed to examine another player's cards before they have been played. Players may share or withhold information about their own cards with other players at their own discretion.

All players are free to examine all discarded cards at any time.

©In *AE*, each faction will have a Current Card and Pending Card on each map. *TK* cards are used on the *TK* map. *DS* cards are used on the *DS* map.

1.1.1 Option Card Procedure

Step 1: The phasing faction discards its Current Card. If the card has a symbol that indicates it is a recyclable (\Box) card, it is returned to the faction's deck for possible future play. If the card does not have such a symbol, it is set aside and cannot be played again.

Step 2: The phasing faction reveals its Pending Card. The card is turned face up on the table in view of all players. This option card becomes the faction's new Current Card.

As this card is revealed, any interned units (16.7) on its back are repatriated back to the map as per Placing Replacements (1.3.4).

After the phasing faction places any repatriated units, it must verify the card played was in compliance with its Option Card Selection Restrictions (1.1.1) at the time it was selected. If found with an illegal Current Card, it must immediately return that card to its hand and will

not have a Current Card this Season. *Important:* This returned card is *not* considered to be played.

In addition, if the Axis faction makes an illegal Current Card play during Pre-War or Limited War, either Allied faction *may* declare that Total War (12.3) immediately goes into effect.

Design Note: This can be really bad for the Axis, so if your opponent made an honest mistake, the sporting thing to do would be to pass on starting Total War. The intention behind the penalty is to prevent crafty players from selecting illegal cards to extend Limited War.

©If the phasing faction legally plays an option card with a © symbol, it must remove the *identically named* card found in its other deck.

© *Example:* If the Soviet faction reveals DS card 11b Siberian Reserves Released, it must remove TK card 26b Siberian Reserves Released.

Step 3: The phasing faction performs any actions listed under *Option Card Segment* on the Current Card, in the order listed. See 1.1.2.

Step 4: The phasing faction must select a Pending Card to play in his next Seasonal Phase. See 1.1.3.

*Step 5: If the phasing faction is the *Soviet* faction, it must check its Current Card's Production Value to see if there is an increase or decrease to the ESV. See 1.1.4.

1.1.2 Option Card Segment Actions

The phasing faction performs any actions listed under the **Option Card Segment** on the Current Option Card, in the order listed.

Some actions may call for removing other option cards. An option card may be played even if a required card has already been discarded. However, if a card says to remove a certain type of card (for example, Axis *Imperial Directive* cards) that exists in both the faction's hand and the discard pile, the faction *must* remove a card from its hand.

Some actions may call for rolling on a table, selecting or activating a country, etc. These actions are all performed, in the order specified, before moving on to the next step. **Important:** If you are rolling on a table, you must add any Political DRMs (1.1.2.1) that apply unless the event specifically instructs you otherwise.

Some results on Political Events Tables will direct players to another Political Events Table. If this happens, roll the die again, apply Political DRMs and compare the result to the appropriate table. If directed to yet another Political Event Table, continue rolling (still applying Political DRMs) until some final result is obtained.

A final result is any result that does not call for rolling on another Table. If the final result is an italicized Political Event, look it up in the appropriate rules section for instructions on how to apply it.

1.1.2.1 Political DRMs

Political DRMs must be applied to *all* die rolls made in the *Option Card Segment* and the *Political Events Segment* unless specifically stated otherwise. Political DRMs *cannot* be applied to any die rolls made in other Segments, again unless specifically stated otherwise.

Political DRMs are cumulative. The DRMs are as follows:

- Δ+1 for each VP in the Box containing the VP marker if it reads Rising Sun.
- -1 for each VP in the Box containing the VP marker if it reads Allied Crusade.
- -? for the Political DRM based on the location of the Pacific USCL marker on the USCL Track.
- If a Country with an Influence or Neutrality marker is selected for an event requiring a die roll, apply the indicated +1 or 1 DRM. DRMs for Influence and Neutrality markers apply *only* to rolls directly involving *that country*. Specifically, this means rolls on the Diplomatic Incident Table or any Current Card table.

Clarification: Sometimes rolls will take you to different tables or different countries. If that happens, the Influence or Neutrality DRM that was in force for the first roll doesn't "carry over."

Example: The Axis faction plays card 33a Treaty. It selects Hopeh, which has an Axis Influence marker with a +1 DRM. The VP marker reads Rising Sun, but it is in the 0 VP Box. The US has not entered the war yet, so the USCL is 0. So the total DRM for this roll is +1. The Axis faction rolls a 1, which is modified to 2. Looking at the card, the result says "Roll on Diplomatic Incident Table." This next roll also has a +1 DRM. The Axis rolls a 5, which becomes a 6. This result is "Roll on Colonialism Table." The roll on that table will have a 0 DRM, because Influence marker DRMs don't apply to rolls there.

1.1.2.2 Reinforcements

After the faction's Pending Card has been placed, check if the Current Card enters new units into the faction's Force Pool, the Delay Box, or the Strategic Warfare Box:

- Add to Force Pool: All counters listed are placed in the faction's Force Pool.
- Place in Delay Box: All counters listed are placed in the Delay Box. These pieces will be available on a future turn based on their Delay Result (7.1).
- Place in Strategic Warfare Box: All counters listed are placed in the Strategic Warfare Box.

Units are placed as reinforcements only if they have *not* already entered play or been removed from the game.

A faction's Current Card may list counters belonging to Major Countries or Minor Countries. Major Country units are always received. Minor Country units are received only if that country is an *active* Minor Country aligned with the faction.

Example: The Western faction plays card 43a Sextant Conference. This card places a Kiangsu and Szechwan infantry unit in the Delay Box. If one of those countries is not an active Western Minor Country, its infantry unit would not be placed.

©Important: A counter that enters play by a *DS* card *must* be placed in a *DS* Force Pool, Delay Box, or Strategic Warfare Box.

© Clarification: You can't immediately enter counters from a DS card into a TK Pool or Box. Counters that enter through TK cards or rules likewise must start out in Europe.

1.1.3 Pending Card Selection

The card must be from those currently in its hand. This card is placed face down on the table and becomes the faction's Pending Card.

Card selection is final. Once a faction has selected a card and placed it as its Pending Card, it is bound to that card.

A faction that finds it cannot select any option card without violating a restriction must say so. It will not select a Pending Card and thus will not reveal a new Current Card during its next Seasonal Phase.

1.1.3.1 Pending Card Selection Requirements

Before selecting a particular card, carefully check any Selection Requirements listed under that card's title. Many cards cannot be selected unless certain conditions exist.

Each condition that must be met is listed next to a \square symbol. When more than one condition is listed, *all* conditions must be met to select the card.

Example: Look at the Selection Requirements on Western card 19a Aid to China. It cannot be selected unless both card 18a Quarantine Address has been played, and Nationalist China's Posture is War.

When an individual condition lists multiple requirements separated by an "or," the condition is considered met if *any or all* of the requirements are met.

Example: Western card 5 Cash & Carry Bill has a Selection Requirement that reads "Pre-War is not in effect, or European Limited War has occurred." The card may be selected if either or both of those statements are true.

△The Japanese Government: Many Axis cards have a Selection Requirement based on whether the Japanese Army or Navy is "leading the Government."

The Japanese Government marker has two sides: *Army* and *Navy*. When the Government marker is in its Holding Box (on the Axis Force Pool Display), the side that is face up is "leading the government." When the marker is in the Delay Box or the Turn Track, *no* branch is "leading the government."

Example: The Axis faction can select card 3 Army Program only if the Navy is not "leading the government." That is, the Government marker must be Army-side up or not in the Government Holding Box at all.

To play card 8 Demand Inner Mongolia, the Army must be leading the government. If the Government marker is not in the Holding Box with the Army side face up, the Axis faction cannot select this card.

△European War: Many cards have a selection requirement based on "European Limited War" or "European Total War."

European Limited War has occurred if *the European Limited War marker is in a European War Box, or \bigcirc the TK War State is Limited War.

European Total War has occurred if *a European Total War marker is in a European War Box, or ©the TK War State is Total War.

1.1.3.2 War State Selection Restrictions

While Pre-War is in Effect: A faction can only select a blue Pre-War card

While Limited War is in Effect: A faction can only select a blue Pre-War card or gray Limited War card.

While Total War is in Effect: A faction can select a blue Pre-War, gray Limited War or red Total War card.

1.1.3.3 Other Selection Restrictions

Sequential Selection Restrictions: A faction cannot select a particular type of card listed below as its Pending Card if its *Current Card* is the same type:

• Axis: Demand cards

• △Axis: *Diplomatic Overtures* cards

• Western: Limited War Blitz cards

Axis *Demand* and *Diplomatic Overtures* cards have the words "Demand" or "Diplomatic Overtures" in their names, respectively.

Clarification: What this means is that you can't play these cards "back-to-back." For example, if the Axis Current Card is Diplomatic Overtures (card 11), then another Diplomatic Overtures (card 12) cannot be selected as the Axis Pending Card.

Because of the strict sequencing of the Option Card Procedure (1.1.1), you won't be able to play recyclable (1.1.1) cards like Western card 22 Chinese War Production "back-to-back" when there is only one of that card in your deck.

Annual Selection Restrictions: A faction cannot *reveal* a particular type of card listed below more than once per calendar year.

• Axis: Rearmament cards

Western: Rearmament cardsSoviet: Rearmament cards

• Soviet: *Offensive* cards

• △Soviet: War Progress cards

Rearmament cards have a hammer-and-wrench (**) symbol. Soviet *Offensive* and *War Progress* cards have the words "Offensive" or "War Progress" (respectively) in their titles.

For determining the "calendar year" of a Winter season, use the Nov-Dec turn.

Clarification: A faction can play one of these cards in 1937, one in 1938, and so on. If the Axis faction reveals a Rearmament card in Nov-Dec 1937, it can select another Rearmament card as its Pending Card because that won't be revealed until the Mar-Apr 1938 turn.

©Theater Selection Restrictions: A faction cannot select a *TK* card for its *DS* Pending Card, nor can it select a *TK* card for its *DS* Pending Card

When selecting TK and DS Pending Cards, a faction cannot select *identically named* option cards with © symbols in their upper left-hand corners during the same season.

© Example: If the Soviet faction wishes to select TK card 26b Siberian Reserves Released, it cannot select DS card 11b Siberia Reserves Released in the same turn.

Provided it is abiding by its Production Limit (see below), the Soviet faction can select TK card 23 Limited War Production and DS card 24 Limited War Production. Although these cards have identical names, they do not have © symbols.

©Soviet Production Limit Restrictions: Each Soviet option card has a Production Value printed in a black circle in the upper left-hand corner. When selecting *TK* and *DS* Pending Cards, their combined Production Value cannot exceed the Soviet Production Limit.

If Pre-War or Limited War is in effect on both maps, the Soviet Production Limit is 1.

If Total War is in effect on either or both maps, the Soviet Production Limit is $\bf 3.$

© Example: Total War is in effect on the TK map, and Russia's Posture is War on both maps. If the Soviet faction selects TK card 38 Total War Production, the card's Production Value of 3 won't allow any card with a Production Value greater than 0 to be selected in DS.

So the Soviet faction selects TK card 39 Total War Production instead, a 2-point Production Value card. That allows it to play DS card 24 Limited War Production, which has a Production Value of 1.

*1.1.4 Soviet Current Card ESV Adjustment

Each Soviet option card has a Production Value, printed in a black circle in the upper left-hand corner.

When revealing its new Current Card each <u>Seasonal Turn</u>, the Soviet faction must consult the Current Card ESV Adjustment Table (printed on its Force Pool) to see if there is an adjustment to the ESV.

Look up the appropriate line based on the current *DS* War State and the Production Value of the Current Card. If an ESV adjustment is listed, use the "No War" adjustment if there is no War marker in the Soviet European War Box. If there is a War marker there, use the "War" adjustment instead.

* Clarification: In Spring 1939, the Soviet faction reveals card 16 Pre-War Production. Limited War is in effect in DS, and there is no War marker in the Soviet European War Box. According to the Soviet Current Card PSV Adjustment table, the ESV is increased by 1.

1.2 Logistics / Partisan Segment

The phasing faction may place or remove *one* Logistics and *any number* of Partisan Base markers it may have.

Design Note: These markers serve as locations where you can Replacements, so they're very useful.

1.2.1 Logistics Markers

Each faction has one or more Logistics markers. The phasing faction may either place *or* remove *one* Logistics marker on the map. It cannot do both in the same Seasonal Marker Placement Segment.

If a Logistics marker is in its Force Pool, the phasing faction may place it on the map per these placement limitations:

- Axis: Place in any City hex containing a Japanese ground unit that can trace a supply line to a supply source in Japan.
 Additionally, the Kwantung Logistics marker can only be placed in Manchukuo or Korea; furthermore, the selected area must be a Japanese Dependent.
- Soviet: Place in any Road or Rail hex that contains or is adjacent to a Russian HQ unit that can trace an *overland supply* line (10.2) to a supply source in Russia.
- \(\Delta \text{Western:} \) Place in a City hex containing a supplied US ground unit. The City hex *cannot* be in a British Dependent on the West Map.

If a Logistics Marker is on the map, the phasing faction may either leave it there, or pick it up and place it in the Delay Box.

Clarification: This means you won't be able to place it back on the map until your next Logistics / Partisan Segment, at the earliest.

Logistics Marker Placement Restrictions:

- A Logistics marker cannot be placed in a hex containing an enemy unit, Detachment, or Logistics marker.
- A Logistics marker cannot be placed in a hex that already contains a friendly Logistics marker.
- A Logistics marker can be placed in a hex with a friendly Detachment marker, but the Detachment marker is immediately placed in the Delay Box.

Removing Logistics Markers: If an enemy ground unit or Airdrop marker enters a hex containing *only* a Logistics marker during any Movement or Combat Phase, the Logistics marker is placed in the Delay Box. The enemy ground unit or Airdrop marker can then proceed normally.

Clarification: Shooing away a Logistics marker does not slow down the unit in any way.

1.2.2 Partisan Base Markers

The Allied factions may receive Partisan Base markers through Political Event results. An Allied faction can place and/or remove a friendly Partisan Base marker as restricted below.

More than one Partisan Base can be placed in the same Logistics / Partisan Segment, although no more than one can be placed in a single Conquered Allied Minor Country per Logistics / Partisan Segment.

1.2.2.1 Partisan Base Placement

If a Partisan Base is in its Force Pool, the Allied faction may place it in any Rough or City hex (see Terrain Key) in *any* Conquered Allied Minor Country.

Clarification: You can place a Partisan Base in a Conquered Minor Country belonging to the other Allied faction.

You cannot, however, place a Partisan Base marker in a Region within a Conquered Allied Minor Country that has been ceded to Japan (13.3.2). For example, if the Inner Mongolia Region of Hopeh has become a Japanese Dependent, you wouldn't be able to place Partisan Base marker in Inner Mongolia.

Example: Hopeh is a Conquered Western Minor Country, but the Soviet faction has an available Partisan Base marker and chooses to place it in that Country. In the Soviet Conditional Events Phase, Hopeh may be activated as a Soviet minor (16.5.1).

Partisan Base Placement Restrictions:

- A Partisan Base cannot be placed in a hex containing another Partisan Base marker or an enemy unit, Detachment, or Logistics marker.
- A Partisan Base cannot be placed in a hex containing an EZOC unless another friendly unit is in that hex.
- A Partisan Base cannot be placed in a Conquered Allied Minor Country containing an enemy Partisan Base.

Example: If there is a Soviet Partisan Base in Hopeh, the Western faction cannot place one in the country.

1.2.2.2 On-map Partisan Bases

If a Partisan Base is in a hex, the Allied faction may leave it there or remove it and place it in the Delay Box. The Allied faction may do this even if the hex contains an enemy unit or marker.

Design Note: Placing a Partisan Base plants the seed of military insurgency that grows to fruition at the end of the Allied Turn. For example, the Western faction places a Partisan Base at the beginning of a <u>Seasonal Turn</u> and follows it up by reactivating the Minor Country (16.3.1) in the Conditional Events Segment of the same turn. When reactivated, the country's Reserve unit is placed on the Partisan Base. The Partisan Base then serves as a Replacement Location where the Western player can bring in more replacements belonging to that country.

If the Axis faction occupies the Partisan Base, the marker can remain in that hex for the Axis player to garrison as long as the Western faction keeps it there. Furthermore, if all Cities and Partisan Bases in a country are occupied, that country once again becomes a Conquered Allied Minor Country, making it eligible to receive more Partisan Base markers! If you look at China, you see a lot of room to place Partisan Base markers and tie down Axis ground units on garrison duty.

1.3 Replacements Segment

In its Replacements Segment, the phasing faction may receive Seasonal Replacement steps. Unless otherwise stated, all replacement steps received are cumulative.

Seasonal Replacements steps received in this Segment are received on Seasonal Turns only. Replacements received in Political Event or Conditional Segments can be received on any Turns in which they might occur.

1.3.1 Current Card Seasonal Replacements

The phasing faction may receive replacements as indicated on its Current Card, in the red box with the **Replacements Segment** heading.

Clarification: Some option cards do not have a Replacements Segment box.

△Communist Chinese Replacements: If a Soviet Option Card lists "Communist Chinese" replacements, it may use these for steps belonging to *any* Soviet Chinese Country.

△Nationalist Chinese Replacements: If a Western Option Card lists "Nationalist Chinese" replacements, it may use these for steps belonging to *any* Western Chinese Country.

1.3.2 Additional Seasonal Replacements

The phasing faction may receive additional seasonal replacements if the following markers are in the Strategic Warfare Box or on the VP Track. These replacements are cumulative.

Clarification: The additional replacements provided by these markers are printed in a circle. As with the square DRM notation, black means it applies to the Axis; green to the West; red to the Soviets; and white to all factions.

△1.3.2.1 Hakko Ichiu

If the Hakko Ichiu marker is on the VP Track *and* the VP marker reads Rising Sun, the Axis faction receives one Japanese infantry replacement step for each VP in the VP Track Box containing the VP marker. Additionally, the Axis faction receives one Japanese infantry replacement step for each VP in the VP Track Box containing the Hakko Ichiu marker itself.

If the Axis faction is entitled to more than one Hakko Ichiu infantry step in a Replacements Segment, it may exchange pairs of them for single Japanese armor steps instead.

Example: The VP reads Rising Sun and is in the 1 VP Box. The Hakko Ichiu VP marker is in the 3 VP Box. The Axis player could take these four replacements as either four infantry steps, one armor step and two infantry steps, or two armor steps – Japanese units only!

△1.3.2.2 Japanese Mandate

If the Japanese Mandate marker is on the VP Track *and* the VP marker reads Rising Sun, the Axis faction receives one Japanese infantry replacement step for each VP in the VP Track Box containing the VP marker.

If the Axis faction is entitled to more than one Japanese Mandate infantry step in a Replacements Segment, it may exchange pairs of them for single Japanese armor steps instead.

1.3.2.3 Minor Country Production

If a faction's Minor Country Production +1 marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, that faction receives *one* Minor Country replacement step. If a faction's Minor Country Production +2 marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, that faction receives *two* Minor Country replacement steps.

△1.3.2.4 US Victory Program

If the US Victory Program marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, the Western faction receives *one* US infantry replacement step.

1.3.3 Taking Replacements

Important: The following rules apply in any Segment a faction receives replacements. They are listed here for convenience.

Players cannot accumulate or save replacements. If a player cannot take all his replacement steps and place them on the map for any reason, the extra unplaced replacement steps are lost.

Replacements are taken from a Force Pool as *one-step* ground units of the nationality, number, and unit type received. A player cannot place *multi-step units as replacements*. Replacements are placed on the map per Placing Replacements (1.3.4).

Clarification: Many one-step ground units are the reduced-strength sides of two-step army units. These one-step units are available to be taken as replacements. You'll get to build them up to their full-strength two-step sides in the Organization Segment.

Force Pool Limitation: The one-step units in a faction's Force Pool limit how many and what type of units can be taken as replacement steps. One-step units located anywhere else, such as the Delay Box or the Turn Track, cannot be taken as replacement steps.

Example: The Soviet faction receives 12 Russian infantry replacements, but only 10 one-step Russian infantry units are in the Soviet Force Pool. Two replacements are lost.

Unit Type Limitation: Infantry replacements can be taken only as infantry-type units (airborne, cavalry, infantry, or marine – but *not* garrison). Armor replacements can be taken as either armor-type (armor or mechanized) or infantry-type units.

Example: Axis card 28b North Wind Cloudy states "Japan: 1 tank & 4 infantry steps" as Seasonal Replacements. The Axis player could receive 5 infantry steps instead.

△Quit India Restriction: If the Axis *Quit India* marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, the Western faction may not take British *Ind* colonial steps as replacements.

1.3.3.1 Minor Country Replacements

Unless specifically stated otherwise, a phasing faction may allocate its Minor Country replacements received to any Minor Country or Countries belonging to that faction. **Exception:** An Allied faction cannot allocate replacements to a *Conquered Allied Minor Country*.

Example: The Western faction receives two Western Minor Country replacements. If there are four Western Minor Countries, the player must decide which Minor Countries get these limited resources. Both replacements can go to the same Western Minor Country.

Unless specifically stated otherwise, each Minor Country replacement step received may be taken as an infantry-type *or* armor-type unit. If more than one replacement is received, both unit types may be taken in the same Segment.

1.3.3.2 Airborne and Marine Units

A player must use *two* infantry-type replacement steps to take a onestep airborne or marine unit as a replacement.

For single-nationality airborne and marine units, both infantry-type replacement steps must be of the same nationality. For the multinational Western airborne unit, the Western faction must use one British *and* one US infantry replacement step.

Example: You can use two Russian infantry steps to receive one Russian airborne replacement step.

1.3.3.3 Garrison Units

Garrison units (2.3.2.3) cannot be taken as replacements. They can only be placed in the Organization Segment.

1.3.3.4 Elite Units

Elite units (2.3.4.3) can be taken as replacements.

1.3.3.5 Colonial Units

Colonial units can be taken as replacements, but they have placement restrictions (1.3.4). When an option card specifies replacements to be colonial steps, non-colonial steps cannot be taken instead.

Example: Western card 27 Commonwealth Support has a Conditional Event that specifies "Britain: 1 colonial infantry step." The Western faction cannot take a non-colonial infantry step instead.

1.3.4 Placing Replacements

Important: The following rules apply in any Segment a faction receives replacements. They are listed here for convenience.

The owning player chooses where units are placed.

Unless otherwise restricted, any number of replacements can be placed in the same hex.

Clarification: Remember that stacking limits (9.2) are enforced after every Phase and Segment, so don't place too many units in the same hex because you'll have to eliminate the excess.

Replacement Locations: Units can be placed in any or all of the following locations of the *DS* map as specified below. Placing one unit in a location – a City hex, for example – does not prohibit placing another unit in the same or a different location in the same Segment. *Important:* No matter which Replacement Location is stated in this section, a replacement unit *cannot* be placed in a hex that contains an enemy ground unit, support unit, Detachment, or Logistics marker.

- \(\Delta \) A non-colonial, non-Kwantung unit can be placed in a Home Country City hex.
- \(\Delta \) A non-colonial, non-Kwantung unit can be placed in any
 Home Country hex that contains a supplied HQ of the same
 nationality.

- \(\Delta \) A British non-colonial can be placed in the Europe/Africa Off-Map Box.
- \(\Delta \) A British colonial must be placed in a City hex in the proper
 Dependent or Off-Map Box identified below. The City must be
 under Western control.

Afr – Europe/Africa Box

Aus – Australia

Ind - India

NZ - New Zealand

- A French colonial unit *must* be placed in a City in a French Dependent. The City must be under friendly control.
- $\triangle A$ French non-colonial unit must be placed in the Europe/Africa Off-Map Box.

Clarification: Remember that only Western units are allowed in the Europe/Africa Off-Map Box. So if France is an Axis or Soviet Minor Country, those factions will not be able to take French non-colonial replacements.

- \(\Delta \) A Japanese non-colonial, non-Kwantung unit can be placed in
 a hex containing the Axis IGHQ Logistics marker if it can trace a
 supply line to a supply source in Japan.
- \(\Delta \) A Japanese Kwantung unit can be placed in a hex containing
 the Axis Kwantung Logistics marker if it can trace a supply line
 to a supply source in Japan.

Clarification: Note that this Logistics marker is the only location where Kwantung replacements can be placed in the game.

- \(\Delta \) Japanese Col colonial unit must be placed in a City hex in any Japanese Dependent or Conquered Allied Country that contains a Japanese ground unit, Detachment, or Logistics marker.
- \(\Delta \) A Japanese Bur, Ind, or Rus colonial unit must be placed in a
 City hex in the Country or Dependent named as follows. The City
 must contain a Japanese ground unit, Detachment, or Logistics
 marker.

Bur - Burma

Ind - India

Rus - Russia or any Far East Region Japanese Dependent

- A Minor Country unit can be placed in a Home Country hex that contains a Partisan Base marker.
- A Russian unit can be placed in the hex containing the Soviet Logistics marker if it can trace an *overland* supply line to a supply source in Russia or a Soviet Off-Map Box.
- $\triangle A$ Russian unit can be placed in the Eastern Europe Box.
- \(\Delta \) A US non-colonial unit can be placed in the Western US Off-Map Box.
- \(\Delta \) A US *Phil* colonial unit must be placed in a City in the Philippines. The City must be under Western control.
- \(\Delta \) A US unit can be placed in the hex containing a Western
 Logistics marker if it can trace a supply line to the Western US
 Off-Map Box.
- The Western Airborne unit may be placed as either a British or US unit.

Design Note: Be sure to garrison Cities in an enemy country to prevent enemy replacements from appearing in them. It's trouble to have enemy replacements popping up behind your lines.

2. Initial Administrative Phase

In this Phase, the phasing faction resolves any Political Events on its Current Card, places support units and Convoy markers, and organizes its ground units.

2.1 Political Events Segment

Skip this Segment if the phasing faction's Current Card does *not* have a section that reads **Political Events Segment**.

If the faction's Current Card does have a section that reads *Political Events Segment*, the phasing faction must perform all actions listed in that section, in the order listed, even if it already resolved those actions on a previous turn of the current season.

Many Political Events are resolved by rolling one die, applying Political DRMs (1.1.2.1), and comparing the result to a Political Events Table or text on the card. Modified die rolls less than 1 or greater than 6 are treated as 1 and 6 respectively. Some results on Political Events Tables will direct players to another Political Events Table. If this happens, roll the die again, apply Political DRMs and compare the result to the appropriate table. If directed to yet another Political Event Table, continue rolling (still applying Political DRMs) until some final result is obtained.

A final result is any result that does not call for rolling on another Table. If the final result is an italicized Political Event, look it up in the appropriate rules section for instructions on how to apply it.

Eliminating Steps: If the elimination of steps is required by a Political Event, use Eliminating Steps (4.2.6.2).

2.2 Support Segment

Important: If you haven't done so already, go to the Glossary section and read about <u>Air Base</u>, <u>Naval Base</u>, <u>Multi-Zone Port</u>, Naval Zone, Naval Zone Box, <u>Open Port</u>, and <u>Restricted Waterway</u>. Their definitions are important to the rules in this section.

Design Note: The large-scale employment of ships and aircraft has been abstracted into the various support units available to each faction. Support units can do many things: provide combat support, create Beachheads, interdict enemy movement and supply, prevent enemy replacements from appearing in a replacement location, and so on. Efficient use of these assets is one of the keys to victory.

For many DS newbies, this section is one of the hardest parts of the design to understand. Our advice: be patient and proceed slowly, step by step through the sequence of play. We've also prepared a Support Unit & Convoy Marker Player Aid Card that summarizes the rules in this section. Keep that handy.

The phasing faction performs actions in the Support Segment are in the following order:

Step 1: Return to Base (2.2.1)

Step 2: Beachhead Maintenance (2.2.2)

Step 3: Support Unit and Convoy Marker Placement (2.2.3)

Step 4: Blitz Marker Placement (2.2.4)

Step 5: Beachhead Failure (2.2.5)

2.2.1 Return to Base

All *phasing* faction support units and Convoy markers located in a hex, Naval Zone Box, or Strategic Warfare Box are removed from the map. If the unit or marker has a Delay Stripe, place it in the Delay Box. Otherwise, place it in the faction's Force Pool.

Clarification: An obvious exception: the inherent Supply Convoys printed on the map are not removed.

Flip an Escort Troop Convoy marker printed on the back of an Air Force or Surface Fleet unit to its support unit side before placing it in the Delay Box. Flip a CV Strike unit to its CV Fleet side before placing it in the Delay Box.

2.2.2 Beachhead Maintenance

If the phasing faction has a Beachhead-1 or Beachhead-2 marker in an All-Sea hex, it may leave that marker on the map *provided* it meets these two conditions:

- The marker is stacked with friendly ground units.
- The marker's Beachhead Hexside (i.e., the arrow) points to a Land hex occupied by enemy units.

If a Beachhead-2 marker will remain on the map, it must be flipped to its Beachhead-1 side.

Design Note: This represents the headway the invaders on the beach are making into the defenses.

If the phasing faction's Beachhead marker does *not* meet the two conditions above, it *must* be removed to the faction's Force Pool. Before removing the marker, the phasing faction may immediately conduct an *Inland Advance* (see below) with any or all ground units stacked on the Beachhead marker.

If the Beachhead marker meets the two conditions above, the phasing faction may return the marker to its Force Pool anyway. Leave the ground units in the All-Sea hex for now. If they are not stacked with a Beachhead marker at the end of the Beachhead Failure step, they will be eliminated (2.2.5).

Design Note: You might wish to pick up a Beachhead marker in order to place it in the same hex facing a different direction. Or you might simply need the Beachhead marker elsewhere, even if it means losing those steps.

△Axis SNLF Beachhead-0 markers: Axis SNLF Beachhead-0 markers that were placed earlier *this* turn (during an Option Card Segment or Political Events Segment) automatically remain on the map.

Inland Advance: To perform an Inland Advance, take a unit on the Beachhead marker and place it in the Land hex adjacent to the marker's Beachhead Hexside. This is *not* movement, so ignore the unit's MA and any MP costs.

There is no limit to the number of units that can conduct an Inland Advance.

An Inland Advance can be conducted during Mud, Storms, or Snow turns.

Clarification: An Inland Advance is similar to a Beachhead Landing (4.1.3), but units do not have to be supplied or <u>Blitz-enabled</u> to perform it, and they are not restricted by Policies (13.6.1), Truces (13.6.2) and Failures (14.15).

2.2.3 Support Unit and Convoy Marker Placement

If the phasing faction has a support unit in its Force Pool, it may place that counter on the map using the rules for Support Unit Placement (2.2.3.1).

If a support unit is placed, each of the non-phasing factions in turn has the option to *contest* that placement with a support unit in its Force Pool using the rules for Contesting Support Unit Placement (2.2.3.2). If both non-phasing factions can potentially contest a placement, the order of resolution is Axis, Western, Soviet.

Once both non-phasing factions decline to contest the placement of a phasing support unit, that unit is considered *successfully placed*. Once successfully placed, a support unit cannot be contested again in that Segment. **Exception:** A CV Strike unit may be contested as it is being flipped from its CV Fleet side.

Until a support unit is successfully placed it has no effect on the map.

Example: The Axis faction attempts placement of a Japanese Air Force unit on Manila (w3824), which contains a supplied US ground unit (making it a US <u>Air Base</u>). Normally, a hex with an enemy Air

Force unit cannot be an <u>Air Base</u>. However, the Western player can contest placement at this time using Manila as an <u>Air Base</u> because the Japanese Air unit is not yet "successfully placed." If he chooses to not contest this placement, the Japanese Air unit is then successfully placed and Manila is no longer a US <u>Air Base</u> for that Segment.

If the phasing faction has a Convoy Marker in its Force Pool, it may place that marker in a Convoys Box on the map using the rules for Convoy Marker Placement (2.2.3.6).

Clarification: Convoy marker placement cannot be contested – only support unit placement.

After a support unit or Convoy marker is placed and any contest resolved, the phasing faction may place another available support unit or Convoy marker. The non-phasing factions again have the option to contest this new placement. Play alternates in this fashion until the phasing faction declares it is finished with this step of the Support Segment.

Clarification: Support unit placement and convoy marker placement can occur in any order the phasing faction wishes. Players are not required to place or contest any support units or Convoy markers. They may want to save some for use on later turns.

2.2.3.1 Support Unit Placement

To place a support unit, the phasing player takes a support unit from his *DS* Force Pool and places it in a hex, Naval Zone Box, or Strategic Warfare Box as limited below.

Fleet Unit Placement:

- CV Fleet: A CV Fleet can be placed in an All-Sea hex or On Station Box. The CV Fleet must be able to trace a Fleet Unit Path as described below. In addition, the placement location's Naval Zone must contain a Naval Base of the same nationality. Important: If successfully placed in a hex, the CV Fleet must immediately flip over to its CV Strike side and attempt placement as a CV Strike as described below.
- Surface Fleet: A Surface Fleet can be placed in an All-Sea hex or On Station Box. The Surface Fleet must be able to trace a Fleet Unit Path. In addition, the placement location's Naval Zone must contain a Naval Base of the same nationality. Important: If successfully placed in an All-Sea hex, the unit must place a Beachhead marker (2.2.3.4). If successfully placed in an On Station Box, the phasing faction must immediately decide if the unit will flip over to its Escort Troop Convoy marker side (2.2.3.6).
- Sub Fleet: A Sub Fleet can be placed in the On Station Box of a Naval Zone that contains a <u>Naval Base</u> of the same nationality. The Sub Fleet does not have trace a Fleet Unit Path.

A Sub Fleet can also be placed in the Strategic Warfare Box if a <u>Naval Base</u> of the same nationality is somewhere on the map. No Fleet Unit Path is traced; just place the unit.

Clarification: Sub Fleets (and Bombers below) are printed with a DRM on the front, to remind you that those units can impact the enemy Delay DRMs if they're in the Strategic Warfare Box.

Fleet Unit Path: The path is traced from a Home Country Naval Base or Home Country Open Port, along a continuous chain of adjacent Naval Zones and/or Off-Map Boxes, to the Naval Zone containing the placement location. If the Zone of placement contains a Home Country Naval Base, then no path is traced, just place the unit. Each Naval Zone or Off-Map Box along the path except for the Zone of placement must contain a friendly Open Port.

Any Western Off-Map Box can be considered a Home Country <u>Open</u> Port for a Western fleet unit.

<u>Restricted Waterway</u> Restriction: A Fleet Unit Path cannot be traced between the following adjacent Naval Zones unless one of the ports listed with that pair of Naval Zones is an <u>Open Port</u>:

- Sea of Japan and Sea of Okhotsk: Toyohara (e5505).
- Sea of Japan and Japanese Coast: Hakodate (e5205), Nagasaki (e4501) or Toyohara (e5505).
- Sea of Japan and Yellow Sea: Nagasaki (e4501).
- South China Sea and Bay of Bengal: Batavia (w2819) or Singapore (w3218).

Clarification: Note that you need at least one <u>Open Port</u> in each Naval Zone along the Fleet Unit Path – however, that port does not have to be a Multi-Zone Port "connecting" the two Naval Zones unless it is required to meet the Restricted Waterway restriction.

A port can be a <u>Naval Base</u> without being an <u>Open Port</u>. The distinction is important. Basically, enemy support units in an On Station Box do not block a Fleet Unit Path being traced into that Naval Zone – only through it.

Example: There is a supplied British ground unit in Genzan (w5127), making it a British Naval Base and an unsupplied US ground unit in Nagasaki (e4801), making it a Western Open Port. A British Surface Fleet can be placed in an All-Sea hex in the Sea of Japan Naval Zone, because the Western faction can trace a Fleet Unit Path through the Restricted Waterway of Nagasaki and back to the Western US Box.

How can the Japanese faction stop the British Fleet from being placed in the Sea of Japan? A Japanese CV Fleet or Surface Fleet unit in the Yellow Sea Naval Zone would block the Fleet Unit Path. (A Japanese CV Fleet or Surface Fleet unit in the Sea of Japan Naval Zone would not do that.) Alternately, a Japanese Air unit in Nagasaki would block the Fleet Unit Path through that <u>Restricted Waterway</u>.

Air Unit Placement:

• Air Force or Interceptor: An Air Force can be placed in an All-Sea or Land hex within three hexes of an <u>Air Base</u> of the same nationality. The unit must be able to trace an Air Unit Path as described below. *Important:* If successfully placed in an All-Sea hex, the phasing player must immediately decide if the unit will place a Beachhead marker (2.2.3.4).

Example: A supplied British ground unit is in Singapore (w3218), making it a British Air Base. The Western faction can place a British Air Force in any hex from Singapore out to three hexes. It cannot place a US Air Force though as that requires a US Air Base.

An Air Force can also be placed in the On Station Box of a Naval Zone that contains a <u>Naval Base</u> of the same nationality. *Important:* If successfully placed in an On Station Box, the phasing faction must immediately decide if the unit will flip over to its Escort Troop Convoy marker side (2.2.3.6).

Example: A supplied Japanese ground unit is in Saigon (w3619), making it a Japanese <u>Naval Base</u>. The Axis faction may place a Japanese Air Force in the South China Sea On Station Box.

An Interceptor can be temporarily "placed" only to contest the placement of another support unit (2.2.3.2), but when doing so it is treated as if it were an Air Force unit.

• *Bomber:* A Bomber can be placed in a Land hex within nine hexes of an <u>Air Base</u> of the same nationality. The unit must be able to trace an Air Unit Path. *Important:* If successfully placed in a hex, the phasing faction must immediately flip the Bomber marker to its Devastation marker side (2.2.3.5).

A Bomber can also be placed in the Strategic Warfare Box if an <u>Air Base</u> of the same nationality is somewhere on the map. No Air Unit Path is traced; just place the unit.

Example: A supplied US ground unit is in Saipan (e3906), making it a US <u>Air Base</u>. Thus, the Western faction may place a US Bomber unit in the Strategic Warfare Box. Strategic warfare just happens.

CV Strike: A CV Strike can be placed in an All-Sea or Land hex
within one hex of its CV Fleet, immediately after that CV Fleet
was successfully placed. Just flip the Fleet unit over to its Air
unit side and place it within one hex. The CV Strike must be able
to trace an Air Unit Path. The hex does not have to be in the same
Naval Zone as the CV Fleet.

Clarification: Think of the CV Fleet unit's hex as the <u>Air Base</u> hex for the CV Strike unit. Remember that a CV Strike unit may be contested even after its CV Fleet unit was successfully placed. This nuance is important, because Surface Fleet units cannot contest CV Fleet units but they can contest CV Strike units.

Example: The US TF11 CV Fleet is successfully placed in the Micronesia Naval Zone in hex e3009. The unit flips over to its CV Strike side and is placed one hex away in Kavieng (e2908), which is legal even though that hex is in the Bismarck Sea Naval Zone.

Air Unit Path: The path is traced from the <u>Air Base</u>, along a continuous chain of adjacent hexes, to the placement hex. The path cannot go into a Land hex affected by Mud, nor may it go into a hex in a Neutral Minor Country (13.4) or Policy Affected Country (13.6).

2.2.3.2 Contesting Support Unit Placement

Clarification: Remember – the placement of a marker, such as a Convoy or Airdrop marker, cannot be contested.

To contest enemy support unit placement, a non-phasing faction takes an appropriate support unit from its Force Pool and declares that it is contesting placement. The phasing and non-phasing support units are then immediately placed as follows:

- An Air unit goes in the Delay Box.
- A Fleet unit goes in the Naval Warfare Delay Box.

It does *not* matter which unit was being placed or contesting; only its unit type determines which Box it goes in.

Clarification: This is the only effect of contesting placement. The battles between these units are fought in the Delay Boxes, with the winners being the first ones to come back into play.

Remember that a CV Strike is an Air unit and a CV Fleet is a Fleet unit. So pay attention to which side they're on when being placed or contesting. Since a CV Strike unit is an Air unit, it will go in the Delay Box, while a Fleet unit will go in the Naval Warfare Delay Box (making it susceptible to an extremely long delay result).

"Placed in the same location" (seen in the rules below) means the nonphasing faction places its contesting unit using the Support Unit Placement rules (2.2.3.1). If it cannot be put in the placement location, it cannot contest there.

Contesting Placement in a Hex:

• Air Force or Interceptor: An Air Force or Interceptor unit can contest any support unit placed in an All-Sea or Land hex if it can be placed in the same location.

Example: A US <u>Air Base</u> in Guadalcanal (e2611) allows a US Air Force unit to contest placement of an enemy support unit within three hexes of Guadalcanal.

- *CV Fleet:* A CV Fleet unit can contest any support unit placed in an All-Sea hex if it can be placed in the same location.
- *CV Strike*: A CV Strike unit can contest a Surface Fleet placed in an All-Sea hex if its *CV Fleet* can be placed in the same location.

Example: A British CV Strike unit can contest placement of a Japanese Surface Fleet unit in an All-Sea hex in the Bay of

Bengal Naval Zone, provided a British <u>Naval Base</u> is in the Bay of Bengal Naval Zone and the CV Fleet can trace a Fleet Unit Path to that Zone.

 Surface Fleet: A Surface Fleet unit can contest Air Force, Surface Fleet or CV Strike (not CV Fleet) placed in an All-Sea hex if it can be placed in the same location.

Contesting Placement in an On Station Box:

- Air Force or Interceptor: An Air Force or Interceptor unit can contest any support unit placed in an On Station Box if it can be placed in the same location.
- CV Fleet: A CV Fleet unit can contest any support unit placed in an On Station Box if it can be placed in the same location.
- CV Strike: A CV Strike unit can contest a Surface Fleet or Sub Fleet placed in an On Station Box if its CV Fleet can be placed in the same location.
- Surface Fleet: A Surface Fleet unit can contest an Air Force, Surface Fleet or Sub Fleet placed in an On Station Box if it can be placed in the same location.

Example: A US Surface Fleet unit can contest placement of a Japanese Air Force unit in the Coral Sea On Station Box, provided a US <u>Naval Base</u> is in the Coral Sea Naval Zone and the US Surface Fleet can trace a Fleet Unit Path to that Naval Zone.

Contesting Placement in the Strategic Warfare Box:

Axis or Soviet Air Force or Interceptor: One of these units can
contest Bomber placement in the Strategic Warfare Box if an <u>Air
Base</u> of the same nationality is somewhere on the map. No air
unit path is traced; just contest the placement.

Clarification: Western support units cannot contest the placement of Axis Bomber units in the Strategic Warfare Box.

 Axis or Western Air Force, Interceptor, CV Fleet, CV Strike, or Surface Fleet: One of these units can contest Sub Fleet placement in the Strategic Warfare Box if a <u>Naval Base</u> of the same nationality is somewhere on the map. No air or fleet unit path is traced; just contest the placement.

Clarification: Soviet support units cannot contest the placement of Sub Fleet units in the Strategic Warfare Box.

2.2.3.3 Support Unit Placement and Contest Restrictions Air Unit Restrictions:

• An Air Force or CV Strike unit cannot be placed in or adjacent to a hex containing a successfully placed *friendly* Air unit.

Clarification: A Bomber or Fleet unit can be placed adjacent to a friendly Air unit.

 A support unit cannot be placed in or adjacent to a hex containing a successfully placed *enemy* Air unit, *unless it is* contesting the placement of another enemy support unit.

Clarification: Successfully placed Air units do not, by virtue of this restriction alone, prevent you from contesting the placement of other support units. However, a successfully placed Air unit may cause the non-phasing faction may lose its ability to contest for other reasons.



Example: The Western faction is trying to launch an invasion of Java from Christmas Island (w2518). There are supplied Japanese infantry units in both Telekbetung (w2818) and Batavia (w2819), making those ports <u>Air Bases</u> and <u>Naval Bases</u>. The Axis faction has one Japanese Air Force unit to hold back the Western faction.

The Western faction places a CV Fleet in w2717. The Axis faction chooses not to contest, so the Western faction flips the unit over to its CV Strike side and moves it over to Telekbetung.

The Western faction now chooses to place a Surface Fleet unit in w2618. The Axis faction can contest this placement from its <u>Air Base</u> in Batavia, despite the CV Strike unit being adjacent to the Surface Fleet. If the Axis faction did not have an <u>Air Base</u> in Batavia, it would not be able to contest this placement from Telekbetung – the Western CV Strike unit there means that port cannot be used as an <u>Air Base</u>.

Weather Restrictions:

- An air unit cannot be placed in any hex of a Weather Area experiencing Mud (11.3).
- ΔA support unit cannot be placed in any *All-Sea hex* in the Sea of Japan, Sea of Okhotsk, Northwest Pacific, North Pacific, or Gulf of Alaska Naval Zones when the North Weather Area (11.1) is experiencing Snow (11.5).
- \(\Delta \) A support unit cannot be placed in any \(All \)-Sea \(hex \) in the Bay
 of Bengal, Philippine Sea, or South China Sea Naval Zones when
 the North Monsoon Weather Area is experiencing Mud.
- \(\Delta \) A support unit cannot be placed in any All-Sea hex in the
 Arafura Sea or Bismarck Sea Naval Zones when the South
 Monsoon Weather Area is experiencing Mud.

Other Restrictions:

- No support unit can be placed in Pre-War (12.1).
- ∆If the Kamikazes marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, the Axis faction cannot place a Japanese Air Force, Surface Fleet, CV Fleet, or CV Strike unit in a hex or On Station Box in the Axis Faction Turn. These units can only be used in an Allied Faction Turn to contest the placement of Allied support unit.
- Support Unit Placement and Contest can be limited by Policies (13.6.1), Truces (13.6.2), and Failures (14.15).

2.2.3.4 Beachhead Marker Placement

Air Force: Immediately after an Air Force unit is successfully placed in an All-Sea hex, the phasing faction *may* exchange the unit for a Beachhead marker from its Force Pool. If the exchange is made, place a Beachhead-2 marker in the same hex as the Air Force unit, then put

the Air Force unit in that Naval Zone's *Used Box*. Once made, this decision is final and cannot be changed later.

Surface Fleet: Immediately after a Surface Fleet unit is successfully placed in an All-Sea hex, the phasing faction *must* exchange the unit for a Beachhead marker from its Force Pool. Place a Beachhead-1 marker in the same hex as the Surface Fleet unit, then place the Surface Fleet unit in that Naval Zone's *Used Box*.

Clarification: A defender attacked from a Beachhead-2 marker receives two CRT column shifts (4.2.3). A defender attacked from a Beachhead-1 marker receives only one CRT column shift.

Note that Interceptors, Bombers, CV Fleets, and Sub Fleets cannot place Beachhead markers. Also note that each faction has its own Beachhead marker; they do not belong to specific nationalities.

The special Axis SNLF Beachhead-0 markers are placed via the Operation Z (15.29) and Widespread Attacks (15.37) Political Events.

Successful Placement: When a faction places a Beachhead marker, it must orient the marker so that its arrow points to a Land hex. The hexside between the All-Sea hex and the Land hex is the Beachhead Hexside.

Beachhead Marker Placement Restrictions:

- A Beachhead marker cannot be placed so that it points to a Hex in a Neutral Minor Country (13.4).
- A Beachhead marker cannot be placed so that it points to an All-Sea hex, even one containing another Beachhead marker.
- A Beachhead marker cannot be placed in a hex containing another Beachhead marker.

2.2.3.5 Devastation Marker Placement

After a Bomber unit is successfully placed in a Land hex, the Bomber unit must be flipped to its Devastation marker side. The phasing faction may also select one enemy Detachment or Logistics marker in the hex and place that marker in the Delay Box.

Clarification: Once placed, Devastation markers are never removed. This means you'll permanently lose use of that Bomber unit, but you'll always get to count that hex as being under your <u>control</u> during Victory Point Checks (0.1.1).

2.2.3.6 Convoy Marker Placement

With the technical exception of Escort Convoys (explained below), Convoy marker placement *cannot* be contested.

Clarification: While a support unit cannot contest or prevent placement of an enemy Convoy marker, a support unit in an On Station Box does prevent the ports in that Naval Zone from being Open Ports for an enemy faction. And Open Ports are essential for transport and supply across a Naval Zone.

Standard Convoy Marker Placement: A Standard Convoy marker can be placed in the Convoys Box of a Naval Zone that contains any of the following:

- A Home Country Port for that Convoy marker.
- A Port in a Dependent belonging to the Convoy marker's Home Country.
- A friendly Escort Troop Convoy marker in its Convoys Box.

Clarification: A Port in the Home Country or Dependent does not have to be an <u>Open Port</u> to allow Standard Convoy marker placement. Remember, a Western Off-Map Box can serve as a Home Country Open Port for any Western Convoy marker.

Nationality indicators are printed at the bottom of each Naval Zone's Convoys Box to provide "at a glance" references for what countries can place Convoy markers there. Note that Ceded Land markers may allow a faction to place a Convoy in a Naval Zone it wouldn't normally be able to reach – for example, if the Marshall Islands Region becomes a British Dependent, the

Western faction can place a British Convoy marker in the Marianas Naval Zone.

Design Note: Using an Escort Troop Convoy marker represents the player using his support units to "escort" the merchant ships. An Escort Troop Convoy marker does not have to be of the same nationality as the Standard Convoy marker to allow placement; it must only be friendly.

In order to be placed, a Standard Convoy marker must be able to trace a Fleet Unit Path (as defined in 2.2.3.1) from the Naval Zone to a Home Country Open Port.

Example: The Western faction has captured Okinawa (w4427) and placed a US Detachment there. If the Western faction wanted to place a US Convoy marker in the Yellow Sea Convoys Box it would first have to place a Western Surface Fleet or Air Force unit in the Yellow Sea On Station Box, then flip that unit over to become an Escort Troop Convoy and move it to the Convoys Box. That's because there are no US Dependent Ports or Home Country Ports in the Yellow Sea Naval Zone.

Axis and Soviet Scratch Convoy Placement: An Axis or Soviet *Scratch Convoy* marker can be placed *only* in the Convoys Box of a Naval Zone containing a Key Port (see Terrain Key) that contains a friendly unit, Detachment, or Logistics marker. An Axis or Soviet Scratch Convoy marker does *not* need to trace a Fleet Unit Path to a Home Country Open Port.

Clarification: A friendly Air Force unit allows you to use a Key Port even if the Port contains an enemy ground unit.

Example: If the Axis faction puts a Japanese Air Force unit in Port Moresby (e2606), then the Axis Scratch Convoy can be placed in the Coral Sea or Arafura Sea Naval Zone Boxes, even if Port Moresby is occupied by Allied troops.

US Fleet Train Convoy Placement: The US *Fleet Train* Convoy marker can be placed *only* in the Convoys Box of a Naval Zone containing a Key Port that contains a *US* unit, Detachment, or Western Logistics marker. A Western Off-Map Box can also serve as a Key Port for this placement – no supplied ground unit, Detachment marker, or Logistics marker is required. The US Fleet Train Convoy marker *must* also trace a Fleet Unit Path to a Home Country <u>Open Port</u>.

Escort Troop Convoy Placement: Immediately after an Air Force or Surface Fleet unit is successfully placed in an On Station Box, the phasing faction must decide if the unit will become an Escort Troop Convoy marker. If it does, flip that support unit over to its Escort Troop Convoy side and move it to that Naval Zone's Convoys Box.

Clarification: An Escort Convoy marker cannot be placed directly into a Convoys Box; it must first be placed as an Air Force or Surface Fleet support unit in an On Station Box. So, unlike the other Convoy markers, the non-phasing factions do get one chance to contest this placement – when the support unit is placed.

Convoy Mode: As a Standard Convoy, Scratch Convoy, or Fleet Train Convoy marker is placed, the phasing faction also selects its Convoy Mode by placing the marker *Troop* or *Supply* side face up. A Troop Convoy allows units to move across a Naval Zone. A Supply Convoy allows a supply line to be traced across a Naval Zone.

Design Note: Convoy Mode is important. For example, if a Japanese Convoy marker in the Coral Sea is in Troop Convoy mode, the Axis faction can move units across the Coral Sea, but any Japanese units in, say, Australia would be unsupplied.

Clarification: Surface Fleet or Air Force units can only function as Escort Troop Convoys, not as Supply Convoys.

Note that many Naval Zones have an inherent Supply Convoy for the Western or Axis factions.

There is no limit to the number, type, or mode of Convoy markers that can be a Naval Zone Box.

2.2.4 Blitz Marker Placement

If the phasing faction has a Blitz marker available, it may place that marker in any hex on the map.

Exceptions:

- \(\Delta \) If the phasing faction has a Beachhead marker on the map, it
 must place one Blitz marker in the same hex. After all hexes with
 friendly Beachhead markers have received Blitz markers, any
 additional Blitz markers may go in any other hexes. Exception:
 The Axis faction is never required to place a Blitz marker on an
 SNLF Beachhead-0 marker.
- \(\Delta\) If the Axis faction places a Blitz marker in a Land hex and the Army is not "leading the government," the Axis faction must roll on the Cabinet Crisis Table. Political DRMs (1.1.2.1) do apply to this roll.
- ΔIf the Axis faction places a Blitz marker in an All-Sea hex and the *Navy* is *not* "leading the government," the Axis faction must roll on the Cabinet Crisis Table. Political DRMs (1.1.2.1) do apply to this roll.

Design Note: As you place your Blitz markers, keep in mind that having one in a City hex turns it into an "open city" by canceling the defender's Voluntary Retreat Conversion ability (4.2.5.3).

There are two ways in which a faction may have a Blitz marker available:

- The phasing faction will have a number of Blitz markers available equal to its Current Card's Blitz Value.
- The phasing faction will have a Blitz marker available if one was awarded by a Political Event in the Option Card Segment or Political Events Segment.

Any available Blitz marker not used at this time is lost and cannot be saved for another turn.

Clarification: A Blitz card generates a number of Blitz markers equal to its Blitz Value during each turn that it is a faction's Current Card. A Blitz marker created by a Political Event is available for use during the next Support Segment only.

2.2.5 Beachhead Failure

At the end of this step, all phasing ground units in an All-Sea hex *without* a friendly Beachhead marker are eliminated. Eliminated units that have a Delay Stripe are placed in the Delay Box; those without a Delay Stripe are returned to their Force Pool.

2.3 Organization Segment

The phasing faction may combine one-step ground units on the map to form multi-step units and break down multi-step units into one-step units. Actions in the Organization Segment are performed in the following order:

Step 1: Combinations (2.3.1)

Step 2: Fortress and Garrison Conversions (2.3.2)

Step 3: Voluntary Eliminations (2.3.3)

Step 4: Breakdowns (2.3.4)

Step 5: Detachment Placements and Removals (2.3.5)

Clarification: It's important to get these in the right order! First you combine, then you break down. For example, the Axis faction cannot break down a two-step infantry army into two one-step infantry units and then re-combine those units into a two-step HQ unit in the same Organization Segment.

Force Pool Limitation: The units available in a faction's Force Pool are an absolute limit on Combinations, Breakdowns, and Fortress Conversion.

Delay Stripes: When a unit or marker with a Delay Stripe is removed from its location due to a Combination, Fortress Conversion, or Breakdown, place it in the Delay Box. If the unit or marker does not have a Delay Stripe, place it in its Force Pool.

One-Step and Multi-Step Units: One-step units are the building blocks for each faction's ground units. A one-step ground unit may be taken from the Force Pool and placed on the map when it is taken as a replacement step or when a multi-step unit performs breakdown.

Multi-step ground units are created when a number of one-step units combine into one unit. A multi-step ground unit may be taken from a Force Pool and placed on the map only when one-step units in a hex are combined during the Organization Segment.

Multi-step units are composed of a certain nationality, number of steps and unit-types. A faction's Force Pool Display indicates the specifics to be used when combining or breaking down certain units.

Important: If a certain kind of a multi-step unit is *not* shown on a faction's Force Pool Display, that multi-step unit is composed of infantry-type steps only. *Exception:* A fortress unit may be built with armor *or* infantry steps.

Example: A three-step 6-6-3 British mech army is shown on the Western Force Pool Display. It is composed of two British infantry-type steps and one British armor-type step. The first two steps must be infantry-type steps. If a third step is added or removed, it must be an armor-type step. All similar British mech armies are composed of the same nationality, number of steps, and unit types.

A Japanese HQ unit (which has no picture on the Axis Force Pool Display) is composed of only infantry-type steps. It cannot be formed with any armor-type steps!

Nationality Requirement: When combining or breaking down multistep units, all involved units must be of the *same* nationality.

Example: A three-step Western army is composed of two infantry steps and one armor step. If you are creating the US 8th Army, all the steps used must be US.

 $\triangle Exceptions$:

- The Axis AEx multi-step HQ unit is formed using Japanese and Axis Minor Country one-step infantry units as specified on the Axis Force Pool Display. The Axis Minor Country unit used is placed in the Holding Box on the Axis Force Pool Display.
- A Soviet multi-step Communist Chinese HQ unit is formed using Soviet Chinese Minor Country one-step units *only*, as specified on the Soviet Force Pool Display. The Chinese Minor Country units used are *not* placed in any Holding Box.
- A Western multi-step Nationalist Chinese HQ unit is formed using Western Chinese Minor Country one-step units *only*, as specified on the Western Force Pool Display. The Chinese Minor Country units used are *not* placed in any Holding Box.
- A British one-step infantry-type unit and a US one-step infantry-type unit must combine to form the CBI HQ unit on its two-step side. Either a British or US one-step armor-type unit can be added to combine the CBI HQ unit on its three-step side. This armor-type step is placed in the CBI HQ Holding Box on the Western Force Pool Display.
- The British FE infantry unit and a Western Minor Country onestep infantry-type unit must combine to form the ABDA Army.
 The Western Minor Country unit used is placed in the ABDA Army Holding Box on the Western Force Pool Display.
- Although Kwantung units are considered Japanese units, only Kwantung units can be used when combining a multi-step Kwantung unit. When breaking down non-Kwantung Japanese units, Kwantung units cannot be taken from the Force Pool and placed on the map.

Clarification: Only two one-step Kwantung infantry units can combine to place the 2-1-2 two-step Kwa HQ unit on the map.

One-step units in Holding Boxes are not available for use by the owning faction until they are placed on the map when breaking down those multi-step units.

Clarification: Holding Boxes are used to determine the unit's nationality for various rules purposes.

2.3.1 Combination

The phasing faction may combine smaller step-value units into higher step-value units. **Important:** Only *supplied* units in an Off-Map Box or stacked in a hex can combine.

Combining units is done one step at a time, but can continue as long as further combinations are possible.

Example: A British one-step armor unit and two British one-step infantry units are in the same hex. In one Western Organization Segment, the Western faction can first combine the two infantry units (to form a two-step British infantry unit), and then combine the armor unit with the two-step infantry unit to flip it over to its three-step mech side

2.3.1.1 Combining Units

Combining One-step Units: A one-step unit *with a two-step unit on its other side* can be built up to the two-step side by removing a one-step unit from the map and flipping the other one-step unit to its two-step side.

Example: A Japanese 0-1-1 infantry unit and 1-1-1 one-step infantry unit in the same hex combine by removing the 0-1-1 unit (which is placed in its Force Pool) and flipping over the 1-1-1 to its 2-2-1 two-step side.

A Russian one-step 1-1-1 infantry unit and Russian one-step 2-1-1 Shock infantry unit can combine to increase either unit to its two-step side. The other goes to the Force Pool.

Two one-step units can be combined to form a two-step unit without a one-step unit on its other side. Remove the one-step units from the map and place the desired two-step unit in the same location.

Example: Two US one-step infantry units are removed from the map and a US two-step HQ unit is taken from the Western Force Pool and placed where the two one-step units were removed.

Combining One-step and Two-step Units: A one-step unit can be combined with a two-step unit *with a three-step unit on its other side*. Remove the one-step unit from the map and flip the two-step unit to its three-step side.

Example: A British 3-4-1 two-step infantry unit and a British 2-1-2 one-step armor unit combine by removing the 2-1-2 unit and flipping over the 3-4-1 unit to its 6-6-2 three-step side.

2.3.1.2 Combining Restrictions

Unsupplied units cannot combine.

Units in a hex containing an enemy Air unit cannot combine.

All *fortress* (2.3.2.1) and *garrison* units (2.3.2.3) cannot combine with any other unit. A *port-a-fort* unit (2.3.2.2) can combine with another unit when it is on its infantry or mech side *only*.

ΔJapanese colonial units *cannot* combine with or into Japanese noncolonial units. **Exception:** If the *Showa Restoration* marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, the Axis faction may combine *one* Japanese colonial unit with a Japanese non-colonial unit by placing the *Showa Restoration* marker in the Delay Box.

 Δ Japanese Kwantung units cannot combine with Japanese non-Kwantung units.

Clarification: Japanese colonial and Kwantung units and all Garrison units have squares instead of dots for their Step Value to remind you of this. These units can be converted into fortress units (2.3.2.1).

A player cannot switch different multi-step units in the process of combining.

Example: The Axis player cannot combine a 3-3-1 Japanese two-step infantry unit and a one-step 0-1-1 infantry unit, and replace them with a 3-2-1 Japanese three-step HO unit.

2.3.2 Fortress and Garrison Conversion

2.3.2.1 Fortress Units

A fortress unit can be placed on the map *only* by converting a one-step infantry-type or armor-type unit in a Land hex. To do so, remove a one-step unit from the map and place the desired *two-step* fortress unit of the same nationality from the Force Pool in that same location.

Clarification: That's right, you remove one step and get a two-step fortress unit in return. A Japanese one-step armor unit can convert into a Japanese two-step Per fortress unit.

A unit *cannot* be converted into a fortress if there is already another fortress unit in the hex.

A ground unit does *not* have to be supplied to convert to a fortress.

A ground unit can be converted to a fortress in a hex containing an enemy Air unit.

Clarification: Fortress Conversion is allowed in a hex containing an enemy Air unit even though ground units cannot combine in that hex (per Combining Restrictions above, 2.3.1.2).

Unless specifically stated otherwise, there is no limit to the number of units that may be converted to fortress units within a turn.

△Japanese colonial units *can* convert into Japanese fortress units.

2.3.2.2 Port-a-Fort Units

Japanese 1-1-2 *IG* infantry units and Chinese 1-1-1 *Def* infantry units have one-step fortress units on their other side.

Clarification: We call them port-a-fort units because they are essentially mobile forts.

A port-a-fort unit with its infantry side face up can convert to its fortress side; simply flip the unit over. A port-a-fort unit cannot be converted into a fortress if there is already another fortress unit in the bay

No other one-step units can convert to these one-step fortress units. A one-step port-a-fort infantry unit may also be used to build a regular two-step fortress unit.

A port-a-fort unit with its fortress side face up can convert back to its infantry side; simply flip the unit over to its infantry side. These units do *not* go in the Delay Box when converting back to a non-fortress unit in this manner.

2.3.2.3 Garrison Units

A Garrison unit is any unit with a movement allowance of zero that is restricted to a specific hex listed in 2.3.2.4.

A one-step garrison unit can be placed on the map *only* by converting a one-step infantry-type or armor-type unit in the proper Land hex. To do so, remove the unit from that hex and place the desired garrison unit of the same nationality from the Force Pool in the same location.

A one-step ground unit does *not* have to be supplied to *convert* to a one-step garrison unit.

A one-step ground unit can be converted to a one-step garrison unit in a hex containing an enemy Air unit.

2.3.2.4 Fortress Conversion and Garrison Unit Restrictions

All 0-1-0 garrison infantry units are restricted to the hexes printed on the backs of their counters. Other fortress and garrison units are restricted as follows:

Britain:

- The Cey fortress unit can only be placed in Trincomalee (w3509).
- The HK fortress unit can only be placed in Hong Kong (w4222).
- The Sing fortress unit can only be placed in Singapore (w3218).

Japan:

- The Dai fortress unit can only be placed in Dairen (w5125).
- A Per fortress unit can be placed in any Land hex on the map, but only if the Axis Japanese Mandate marker is on the VP Track.
 Only one Japanese unit per turn can be converted into a Per fortress
- The Sai fortress unit can only be placed in Saipan (e3906).
- The *Truk* fortress unit can only be placed in Truk (e3408).

Manchukuo:

• The Dai fortress unit can only be placed in Dairen (w5125).

Russia:

- The Vlad fortress unit can only be placed in Vladivostok (e5301).
- A Line fortress unit can only be placed in a hex within Russia that shares a border with Manchukuo. Only one Russian unit per turn can be converted into a Line fortress.

Clarification: Note that certain hexes may change hands during the game. Once a Line fort is placed, it stays in the hex until it is eliminated, even after it's no longer on a Border. For example, if Heilungkiang has not been ceded to Russia, the Soviet faction could build a Line fort in Blagoveshchensk (w5727), as that hex shares a Border with Manchukuo. After Heilungkiang has been ceded, that unit would be able to stay there, but the Soviet faction could not build a new Line fort in w5724.

US:

- The *Gm* fortress unit can only be placed in Guam (e3806)
- The Man fortress unit can only be placed in Manila (w3824)

Clarification: Although garrison units may not combine, remember that they may convert into fortress units. For example, the Western faction could convert the Hong Kong 0-1-0 garrison infantry unit into the HK 0-2-0 fortress unit.

2.3.3 Voluntary Unit Elimination

After all combinations and fortress conversions are completed, but before any breakdowns take place, the phasing player may voluntarily eliminate any friendly ground unit on the map.

Important: The whole unit must be eliminated, not individual steps. If a voluntarily eliminated unit does not have a Delay Stripe, it is placed in its Force Pool.

If it does have a Delay Stripe, it is immediately placed on the Turn Track as if a Delay die roll of 1 had been rolled for it. Apply any current Delay DRMs to get the final Delay Result (7.1.1).

Example: An Axis HQ unit is voluntarily eliminated during the May-June turn. The current Delay DRM is 0, so it is placed in the June-July box. If the Delay DRM were +1, it would be placed in the July-Aug box.

Design Note: You may want to voluntarily eliminate units to return hopelessly isolated forces to the Force Pool or to get an important Delay Stripe unit (such as an HQ) back into the Force Pool quickly. Of course, the cost of losing that unit's steps has to be taken into account, but sometimes it is worth it.

2.3.4 Breakdown

After all combinations, fortress conversions, and voluntary unit eliminations are completed, the phasing faction may break down multi-step units into smaller units.

Breaking down a unit is basically the reverse of combining units. A unit breakdown is done one step at a time, but can continue as long as further breakdowns are possible.

A multi-step unit that breaks down does *not* have to be supplied.

A multi-step unit *can* break down in a hex containing an enemy Air unit.

Emergency Breakdown: A player may be required to perform a breakdown due to a specific game event in a Phase or Segment *other than* the Organization Segment. Such a breakdown follows the normal breakdown rules listed below. Because Fortress units *cannot* breakdown, they would be eliminated instead.

2.3.4.1 Breaking Down Units

Two-step Units: A two-step unit *without a one-step unit on its other side* can break down by taking two one-step units from its Force Pool, placing them where the two-step unit is, and removing the two-step unit from its current location.

Example: A two-step Japanese HQ unit breaks down by taking two Japanese one-step infantry units from the Force Pool and placing them in the same hex as the HQ. The HQ is then placed in the Delay Box because it has a Delay Stripe.

A two-step unit with a one-step unit on its other side can break down by flipping to its one-step side, taking another one-step unit from its Force Pool, and placing it with the flipped over one-step unit.

Example: A two-step Japanese 3-3-1 infantry unit breaks down by flipping it over to its 2-1-1 one-step side, taking a one-step Japanese infantry unit from the Axis Force Pool, and placing it with the 2-1-1 infantry unit.

Three-step Units: A three-step unit with a two-step unit on its other side can break down by flipping over the three-step unit to its two-step side, taking a one-step unit from its Force Pool, and placing it with the two-step unit.

Example: A British three-step 6-6-2 mech army may break down by flipping over to its 4-4-1 two-step infantry side, taking a one-step 2-1-2 armor unit from the Western Force Pool, and placing it with the 4-4-1 unit. If it wanted, the Western faction could then break down the 4-4-1 two-step unit.

Holding Box Units: A multi-step unit that has a Holding Box breaks down like other units. However, instead of taking a unit from its Force Pool (when needed) during a breakdown, the unit in the Holding Box must be taken.

2.3.4.2 Breakdown Restrictions

A Fortress unit cannot voluntarily break down.

Clarification: These units have squares instead of dots for their Step Value to remind you of this.

A faction cannot switch different multi-step units in the process of combining.

Example: The Axis player cannot breakdown a three-step Japanese 3-2-1 HQ unit by replacing it with a two-step 3-3-1 infantry unit.

Elite Units: An elite unit (2.3.4.3) cannot be taken from a Force Pool and placed on the map *unless* the unit was *necessary* to combine into the multi-step unit that is breaking down.

Colonial Units: A colonial unit *can* be taken from the Force Pool when breaking down a non-colonial multi-step unit. However, when breaking down a *colonial* multi-step unit, a non-colonial unit *cannot* be taken from the Force Pool.

Example: A two-step1-2-1 Japanese colonial infantry army breaks down by flipping over to its 0-1-1 one-step colonial infantry side, taking another one-step Japanese colonial infantry-type unit from the Axis Force Pool, and placing it in the same location. The infantry-type unit taken from the Force Pool cannot be a non-colonial unit.

△**Kwantung:** The Axis faction cannot take *regular* Japanese one-step units from the Force Pool when breaking down Kwantung units; it must use Kwantung units instead.

© Clarification: This distinction makes Kwantung units slightly different than SS units in TK. In that game, you can take regular German units when breaking down an SS unit.

△2.3.4.3 Elite Units

The following Elite units are subject to the Breakdown Restriction described above.

- Airborne
- Cavalry
- Marine
- British FE infantry
- Chinese *Exp/Def* infantry/port-a-fort
- Japanese IG infantry/port-a-fort
- Japanese Kwantung
- Russian G (Guards) infantry or tank
- Russian S (Shock) infantry

Clarification: Elite one-step units have their unit type symbol shaded to remind you of this rule.

Example: A two-step Russian Shock infantry army breaks down by flipping it over to its 2-1-1 one-step side, taking a one-step Russian infantry-type unit from the Soviet Force Pool, and placing it in the same location. The infantry-type unit taken from the Force Pool cannot be an Airborne, Cavalry, or Shock unit because those are Elite units, none of which were required to combine into a Shock army. (The 2-1-1 necessary to combine into a Shock army is already on the map after the two-step army was flipped over.)

2.3.5 Detachments

During its Organization Segment, the phasing faction can place and/or remove friendly Detachment markers from the map.

Placing Detachments: A Detachment in the Force Pool can be placed in any hex containing a ground unit of the same nationality.

Clarification: You do not flip a unit over to its Detachment side. In effect, that ground unit has just broken down a little bit of itself to form that Detachment, but the parent unit remains.

Detachment Placement Restriction: A Detachment marker cannot be placed in a hex that already contains a Detachment or Logistics marker.

Removing Detachments: A Detachment on the map can be removed and placed in the Delay Box.

If an enemy ground unit or Airdrop marker enters a hex containing *only* a Detachment marker during any Movement or Combat Phase, the Detachment marker is removed. The enemy ground unit or Airdrop marker can then proceed normally.

Clarification: Shooing away Detachments in this manner does not hinder operations in any way.

A unit does not need to be supplied to place or remove a Detachment. A Detachment can also be placed and/or removed in a hex containing an enemy Air unit.

3. Operational Movement Phase

Only phasing ground units with a Movement Allowance greater than zero can move in the Operational Movement Phase. In addition, a unit must be *supplied* (10.) at the beginning of its move. Once it starts to move, it can move out of supply and continue moving. It may also end its move out of supply.

3.1 Movement

Ground units move one at a time. A player must complete the movement of one unit before beginning to move another unit.

A unit must stop moving when it moves *into* a hex containing an *Enemy Zone of Control* (EZOC, 8.1). **Exception:** A unit does not have to stop if another friendly *unit* or Airdrop marker is in that EZOC hex, *or* the moving unit is conducting an Overrun against the unit projecting the EZOC.

Clarification: Friendly Detachment, Logistics, and Partisan Base markers do not negate EZOC.

If a unit starts a Movement Phase in an EZOC, it can move out of that hex. It can move into another EZOC hex at any point in that Movement Phase (in which case it may have to stop per the above).

Clarification: Remember, all non-phasing units are considered enemy units

3.1.1 Hex-to-Hex Procedure

A ground unit may move across a hexside from a hex into an adjacent hex, in any direction or combination of directions the moving player wishes. Before it enters each hex, it pays a *Movement Point* (MP) cost for that hex (and the hexside being crossed) and subtracts that cost from its remaining *Movement Allowance* (MA).

The exact MP cost to enter a hex depends on the terrain in that hex and along the hexside crossed to enter the hex. These costs are listed on the Terrain Effects Chart on the map.

A unit *cannot* enter a hex if it does not have sufficient MA remaining to pay the entire MP cost involved in entering that hex.



Example: A Japanese tank unit moves from Nanking (w4724) into the clear hex of w4624 (which costs 1 MP to enter). It cannot then move into Wenchow (w4524 – a rough hex), because its remaining MA is 1, and a rough hex costs 2 MP to enter.

Minimum Move Exception: A ground unit can exceed its MA when moving into the *first* hex it enters in a Movement Phase. If it does so, it must stop moving after entering that hex.

Clarification: Note that a unit may still be prohibited from moving into a hex due to other movement restrictions.

Example: The Japanese 2-1-1 HQ unit above moves from 24723 across the river hexside (+1 MP) into w4624 (1 MP). This is allowed even though the total 2 MP cost is above the HQ's MA of 1.

Enemy Air Unit: Units can move *out* of a hex containing an enemy Air unit. This does *not* cost any additional MP.

Road or Rail: A unit that moves across a hexside along a *Road* or *Rail* (see Terrain Key) ignores any MP costs for the hex being entered and for any terrain along a hexside crossed by that Road or Rail. Instead, the unit pays a Road/Rail hexside MP cost based on whether it is a one-step or multi-step unit (see Terrain Key), and whether it is the Operational Movement Phase or Reserve Movement Phase. Crossing a *Connected Strait* uses Road/Rail MP costs.

Beachhead: If a ground unit *starts* a Movement Phase in *any* Land hex adjacent to an All-Sea hex containing a friendly Beachhead marker *and* it has not already moved in that Movement Phase, it can move into that hex. This move expends the unit's entire MA.

Clarification: Units can cross All-Sea hexsides to enter a Beachhead hex. Friendly Beachheads act like "bridges" across All-Sea hexes.

If a ground unit *starts* a Movement Phase in a hex containing a friendly Beachhead marker *and* it has not already moved in that Movement Phase, it can move across the marker's Beachhead Hexside *only* into an adjacent Land hex. This move expends the unit's entire MA. A ground unit cannot move off a Beachhead marker through non-Beachhead Hexsides.

Clarification: Units cannot cross All-Sea hexsides to exit a Beachhead hex – they must exit through the Beachhead Hexside. While there are many ways into the Beachhead hex, there is only one way out.



Example: An Axis Beachhead is in hex w4119 in the South China Sea Naval Zone, facing Hanoi (w4219). The Japanese 3-3-1 15th Army starts the Operational Movement Phase in Haikou (w4120). The unit can move onto the Beachhead marker, but must stop moving. In a subsequent Movement Phase (such as the upcoming Reserve Movement Phase) it can move off that Beachhead to Hanoi. That ends its movement for the Phase. It could not move off the Beachhead marker back to Haikou.

Units may also exit Beachheads using Port-to-Port movement (3.1.2).

Marine Units: If a Marine unit *starts* a Movement Phase in a hex adjacent to an All-Sea hexside *and* it has not already moved in that Movement Phase, it can move across that All-Sea hexside into an adjacent Land hex. This move expends the unit's entire MA.

Eastern Europe Box: If a Soviet ground unit *starts* a Movement Phase in any Land hex in Russia along the western edge of the map (from w5311 to w6011, inclusive) *and* it has not already moved in that Movement Phase, it may enter the Eastern Europe Box.

To do so, pick the unit up and place it in the Eastern Europe Box. This placement expends the unit's entire MA.

If a Soviet ground unit *starts* a Movement Phase in the Eastern Europe Box, it may *exit* the Box to any Land hex in Russia along the western edge of the map (from w5311 to w6011, inclusive).

To do so, place the unit in any hex indicated above that does *not* contain an enemy Air unit (*and in the Reserve Movement Phase, is not in an Enemy Zone of Control*). This placement costs 1 MP. The unit is supplied, has its entire remaining MA, and can move immediately after placement using the Hex-to-Hex movement rules.

3.1.2 Port-to-Port Procedure

If a ground unit *starts* a Movement Phase in a hex with a Port or Beachhead marker, or in an Off-Map Box, *and* there is a friendly Troop Convoy marker with sufficient Transport Capacity (see below) in that Naval Zone's Convoys Box, the unit can move across the Naval Zone to any other friendly Open Port in the Naval Zone.

To do so, pick the unit up and place it directly in the friendly **Open** Port.

Clarification: Although the port of embarkation does not have to be an <u>Open Port</u>, the port of debarkation does.

Example: British one-step infantry units are in Majuro (e3515) and Guadalcanal (e2611). A British Troop Convoy marker is in the Micronesia Naval Zone Box, which also contains a Japanese Air Force unit. There are Japanese Detachments in Kwajalein (e3513) and Truk (e3408), which makes them both Japanese Naval Bases. The British unit can move from Majuro and be placed in Guadalcanal as it is a Western Open Port in the Micronesia Naval Zone and is not within three hexes of a Japanese Naval Base. However, the reverse is not true – the British unit in Guadalcanal could not move to Majuro, because it is within three hexes of Kwajalein.

If the unit was moved to a Port in an Off-Map Box, the unit must stop moving.

If the unit was moved to a Multi-Zone <u>Open Port</u> in a hex, the unit can move again (*in the same Movement Phase*) across another Naval Zone to a friendly <u>Open Port</u> in an adjacent Naval Zone. A unit can continue such movement provided it adheres to all other movement restrictions (such as requiring a friendly Troop Convoy marker in the Naval Zone, or stopping after moving into an Off-Map Box).

Example: Continuing the example above, if there were a British Troop Convoy marker in the Coral Sea Convoys Box, the unit moving from Majuro could continue through the Multi-Zone Open Port of Guadalcanal all the way to Townsville (e2106).

A unit that moves Port to Port across a Naval Zone expends its full MA, no matter how many Naval Zones it actually crosses in a single Movement Phase.

Transport Capacity: Each Escort, Scratch, or Standard Troop Convoy marker in a Convoys Box can transport *one* **one-step** unit across its Naval Zone in a Movement Phase. After the Troop Convoy marker is used for transport, move it to that Naval Zone's *Used Box*.

A US Fleet Train Troop Convoy marker in a Convoys Box can transport *one* unit **of any size** across its Naval Zone in a Movement Phase. After the Fleet Train marker is used for transport, move it to that Naval Zone's *Used Box*.

Convoy markers *cannot* combine their capacity. Each marker is used separately.

Clarification: So you can't use two Troop Convoys to transport a two-step unit. Only the Fleet Train can transport a multi-step unit! That's what makes it so special.

△Convoy Nationality: As specified below, the nationality of a Troop Convoy marker limits who can use it to move Port-to-Port across a Naval Zone. *Exception:* Any *Troop Convoy* can transport *any* friendly *Exp* unit.

• Axis Scratch Convoy: any Axis unit

- British or US Convoy: any Western unit
- Japanese Convoy: a Japanese unit only
- Russian Convoy: a Russian unit only
- Soviet Scratch Convoy: any Soviet unit
- US Fleet Train Convoy: a US unit only

3.1.3 Off-Map Box to Off-Map Box Procedure

An Allied ground unit can enter or exit an Off-Map Box directly from or to an adjacent Off-Map Box, as specified on the map. Unlike Port-to-Port movement, the unit must stop moving.

To do so, pick the unit up and place it in the other Off-Map Box. This move expends the unit's entire MA.

There is no limit to the number of units that can move from Off-Map Box to Off-Map Box.

Units can enter an Off-Map Box in the same Movement Phase that other units exit, and vice versa.

Clarification: Moving Port-to-Port and Off-Map Box to Off-Map Box are separate from each other, so both can occur involving the same Off-Map Box in the same Movement Phase.

3.1.4 Movement Restrictions

Procedural Restrictions:

 A ground unit cannot use different movement procedures in the same Movement Phase.

Clarification: So it is only one of Hex-to-Hex, Port-to-Port, or Off-Map Box to Off-Map Box.

Unit and Hex Restrictions:

- A ground unit cannot move into a hex containing an enemy unit.
 Exception: A multi-step armor-type unit conducting an Overrun (3.2) can move into a Land hex containing the one-step enemy ground unit it is overrunning.
- A ground unit cannot move into a hex containing an enemy Beachhead marker.

Weather Restrictions:

• A ground unit cannot move out of a hex affected by Mud (11.3) that contains an EZOC.

Clarification: There are no exceptions here – friendly units do not negate EZOC in mud.

 A ground unit must stop moving after it moves into or out of a hex affected by Storms (11.4) or Snow (11.5) that contains an EZOC.

Clarification: Again, friendly units do not negate EZOC here. However, a multi-step armor unit can ignore the EZOC of a unit is overrunning (3.2) in Storms or Snow.

Political Restrictions:

- Movement can be limited by Policies (13.6.1), Truces (13.6.2), and Failures rules (14.15).
- A ground unit cannot move into a hex outside its Home Country or Dependent during Pre-War (12.1).
- A ground unit cannot move into a hex in a Neutral Minor Country (13.4).
- \(\Delta\) If the Axis Quit India marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box,
 Western ground units in India or Ceylon cannot move into hexes
 outside of India or Ceylon.
- \(\Delta \) A non-Japanese Axis ground unit cannot move into a hex in an Axis Country or Dependent unless it is that unit's Home Country or Dependent. *Exception:* Axis Exp units, *regardless* of nationality, can move into *any* Axis Country.

Clarification: Note that Exp units are always one-step units. Exp units lose their Exp ability when combined into a multi-step unit.

Axis multi-national units (13.8.3) are considered to be both Japanese and the nationality represented by the step in the unit's Holding Box. That means, for example, if the Axis AEx HQ were composed of a Hopeh and Japanese step, it could enter Hopeh, but not Japan or an Axis Mongolia.

 An Axis Kwantung ground unit cannot move into a hex outside a Japanese Dependent unless Russia, Communist China, and Nationalist China are all *not* Policy Affected Countries (13.6.1). An Axis Kwantung ground unit can *never* move using the Port-to-Port Procedure.

Clarification: Unless Japan is fighting both Russia and China, this rule effectively limits Kwantung units to Manchukuo and Korea, along with Inner Mongolia or Soviet Far East Regions should those areas become Japanese Dependents.

Other Restrictions:

- A ground unit belonging to a Minor Country with a Free Passage (14.16), Mobilizing (14.32), or No Occupation (14.34) marker in its Capital cannot move into a hex outside that Minor Country or one of its Dependents.
- An Axis or Western ground unit cannot move into a hex in Russia along the western edge of the map, from w5311 to w6011 inclusive.

Design Note: This is to prevent the Axis faction from sealing off the map in order to prevent the Soviet faction from entering units from his Off-Map Box.

• A Soviet ground unit cannot move into a hex in an Axis Country or Dependent that was activated in the just completed Western War & Peace Segment (6.1).

Design Note: This is to prevent the Allied factions from taking advantage of the order of the Turn Sequence.

 ©An Allied ground unit cannot move into an Off-Map Box on the TK map.

© Design Note: The TK and DS maps are "closed" in the sense that it's not possible to move units directly from one map to the other. The Allies do have the ability to transfer support units between the Force Pools of the two maps using European Commitment Political Events (15.14.2), and through card play they can influence the number of replacement steps received on each map. But once a ground unit is on a map, it's committed to that theater.

3.2 Overruns

If using the Hex-to-Hex procedure and not otherwise prohibited, a *multi-step armor-type* unit can move into a Land hex containing a *single*, one-step enemy ground unit.

Clarification: So if the hex has more than one enemy one-step ground unit or a multi-step unit in it, forget it. Markers have no effect on

The moving unit only pays the normal MP costs to move into the hex. An overrun does *not* cost any additional MP.

The moving unit can ignore the EZOC of the unit it will overrun, *provided* the moving unit immediately moves into the hex with the enemy unit after entering that EZOC hex.

The moving unit cannot ignore the EZOC of other units, *unless* another friendly unit is in that hex.

Immediately after moving into the hex, the enemy unit is eliminated. Place it in the Delay Box if it has a Delay Stripe. Otherwise, place it in its Force Pool.

The same multi-step unit can make more than one overrun in the same Movement Phase.

An overrun is allowed in hexes affected by Storms and Snow.

Overrun Restrictions: Overruns cannot be conducted:

- in the Reserve Movement Phase (5).
- when conducting Exploitation.
- if the enemy one-step unit could receive a defender's CRT
 Column Shift (as if a combat were fought there) due to Terrain,
 Mud, Fortress, Air, or HQ. The same HQ can prevent more than
 one overrun for the same or different defenders in the same
 Movement Phase.



Example: The Russian Plv cav-mech army in w5525 cannot overrun the 2-1-1 Kwantung infantry unit in Hailar (w5625) because it is a rough terrain hex, which would provide the defender a CRT column combat shift.

The Plv cav-mech army also cannot overrun the 4th Kwantung Army in w5525 because it is a multi-step unit.

The Japanese 1-1-1 infantry unit w5426 is a viable target because it is a one-step unit without a CRT column combat shift, but the Plv cavmech army can't move into w5425 and then overrun because there is more than one EZOC in the w5425 hex. (It can ignore the EZOC from the 1-1-1 infantry unit, but not the EZOC from the 4th Kwantung Army.)

So the Soviet player does the following: First, he moves a 3-3-1 infantry unit from w5525 to w5425. It must now stop because of the EZOC from the Japanese units. This infantry unit now negates all EZOC in the w5425 hex.

Then the PIv cav-mech army moves from w5525 into w5425 and w5426, overrunning the Japanese infantry unit. The Japanese line has been outflanked!

How could the Japanese have prevented this disaster? If there had been a Japanese HQ unit in Harbin (w5427), then no overrun against any of the Japanese units could have occurred because the supplied Japanese HQ could have provided any of the defenders a CRT column combat shift.

4. Combat Phase

Combat between phasing units and adjacent enemy units are resolved in this Phase.

Clarification: Remember that the Western and Soviet factions are considered enemy factions to each other. So unless otherwise restricted, combat can occur between them.

4.1 Blitz Combat Segment

The phasing faction performs actions in the Blitz Combat Segment are in the following order:

Step 1: Airdrop (4.1.1)

Step 2: Blitz Combat (4.1.2)

Step 3: Beachhead Landing (4.1.3)

Step 4: Airdrop Landing (4.1.4)

Step 5: CV Strike Returns (4.1.5)

Clarification: You perform all activities in a step before moving on to the next. For example, you can't perform an Airdrop Landing and then conduct Blitz Combat with the unit. If the phasing faction does not have a Blitz or Totsugeki marker on the map, the only step it would need to perform is the CV Strike Returns step.

4.1.1 Airdrop

A faction may use a supplied, <u>Blitz-enabled</u> airborne ground unit in a Land hex to conduct an Airdrop. To do so, flip the unit over to its Airdrop marker side and place it within two hexes of its current location. The placement hex does *not* have to be in a <u>Blitz-enabled</u> location

Design Note: Airdrop markers provide a combat shift, negate EZOC, block Retreat paths and supply lines.

Airdrops are conducted one at a time, and may continue as long as there are phasing supplied, <u>Blitz-enabled</u> airborne units.

An Airdrop marker can be placed in a hex containing enemy ground units or markers.

An Airdrop marker can be placed in a hex containing friendly units and markers, including other Airdrop markers.

An Airdrop marker can be placed in hexes affected by Mud, Storms, or Snow.

Airdrop Path: The range is traced *from* the origin hex *to* the placement hex. Do *not* count the origin hex, but do count the placement hex. Airdrop markers can be placed in their origin hexes (although it makes little sense to do so).

Airdrop Restrictions:

- An Airdrop marker cannot be placed in an All-Sea hex (even one with a Beachhead marker).
- An Airdrop marker cannot be placed in or adjacent to a hex containing an enemy Air unit.
- An Airdrop marker cannot be placed during Pre-War (12.1).
- An Airdrop marker cannot be placed in a hex in a Neutral Minor Country (13.4) or Policy Affected Country (13.6), nor can an Airdrop Path be traced across a hex in such country.
- Airdrop marker placement can be limited by Policies (13.6.1), Truces (13.6.2), and Failures rules (14.15).

Clarification: Airdrop marker placement cannot be "contested" by enemy Support units.

4.1.2 Blitz Combat

Blitz Combat proceeds as a Regular Combat Segment (4.2) with the following modifications:

• Units or markers belonging to the attacker must be <u>Blitz-enabled</u> to attack or provide CRT column shifts (4.2.3). Units or markers belonging to the defender to *not* have to be <u>Blitz-enabled</u>.

Clarification: An HQ unit belonging to the defender can lend HQ Ranged Support even if it is not <u>Blitz-enabled</u>.

• The attacker can receive an Airdrop (4.2.3.2) and/or Armor (4.2.3.3) CRT Shift.

 Units in hexes affected by Mud, Storms, or Snow cannot be attacked in the Blitz Combat Segment. Exception: Russian units that are Blitz-enabled can attack units in hexes affected by Snow.

4.1.3 Beachhead Landing

If a *supplied*, <u>Blitz-enabled</u> ground unit is in a hex containing a Beachhead marker, *and* it did *not* attack in the current Blitz Combat Segment, it may conduct a *Beachhead Landing*.

To do so, take the unit and place it in the Land hex adjacent to the marker's Beachhead Hexside. This is *not* movement, so ignore the unit's MA and any MP costs.

Clarification: It is also not Advance After Combat, so HQ units may conduct Beachhead Landings.

Units conducting a Beachhead Landing are placed one unit at a time. There is no limit to the number of units that can conduct a Beachhead Landing.

A Beachhead Landing can be conducted during Mud, Storms, or Snow turns.

Beachhead Landing Restrictions:

- An unsupplied unit cannot conduct a Beachhead Landing.
- A unit cannot conduct a Beachhead Landing into a hex containing an enemy unit.
- A unit cannot conduct a Beachhead Landing into a hex in a Neutral Minor Country (13.4).
- Beachhead Landings can be limited by Policies (13.6.1), Truces (13.6.2), and Failures (14.15).

△4.1.3.1 Special SNLF Landing

If the Axis faction has a supplied SNLF Beachhead-0 marker on the map, it may conduct a Special SNLF Landing with that marker by taking a Japanese Detachment marker from the Axis Force Pool and placing it in the Land hex adjacent to the SNLF Beachhead-0 marker's Beachhead Hexside.

Special SNLF Landing Restrictions:

- An unsupplied SNLF Beachhead-0 cannot conduct a Special SNLF Landing.
- An SNLF Beachhead-0 cannot conduct a Special SNLF Landing into a hex containing an enemy *unit*. A Special SNLF Landing can be conducted into a hex containing an enemy Detachment or Logistics marker; place the enemy marker in the Delay Box.

Clarification: Note that no ground unit is required to conduct a Special SNLF Landing – that's because many of the initial Japanese landings in December 1941 were regiment-sized or smaller. Also keep in mind that SNLF Beachhead-0 markers are inherently <u>Blitz-enabled</u>.

4.1.4 Airdrop Landing

If an Airdrop marker is unsupplied *or* stacked with an enemy unit, place the Airdrop marker in the Delay Box.

If an Airdrop marker is supplied *and* not stacked with an enemy unit, it may conduct an *Airdrop Landing*.

Clarification: If you can't or don't want to conduct an Airdrop Landing, simply place the Airdrop marker in the Delay Box.

To conduct an Airdrop Landing, take a one-step infantry unit of the same nationality from its Force Pool, place it in the hex containing the Airdrop marker, and place the Airdrop marker in the Delay Box.

The Western Airdrop marker can be replaced with either a British or US one-step infantry unit.

Elite (2.3.4.3) infantry units *cannot* be placed in a hex in an Airdrop Landing.

4.1.5 CV Strike Returns

All CV Strike units in hexes are placed in that Naval Zone's *Used Box*

4.2 Regular Combat Segment

For these rules, the phasing faction is the *attacker*, and the non-phasing faction the *defender*.

A faction need *not* have a Blitz or Totsugeki marker on the map to attack in its *Regular* Combat Segment.

4.2.1 Attacks

The phasing faction may declare an attack with his ground units against one adjacent hex containing enemy ground units, Detachment markers, or Logistics markers. A complete Attack Sequence (4.2.2) for that attack must be resolved before another attack can be declared. In a Combat Segment, a faction may declare as many attacks as it wishes and is eligible to perform, but the attacks are resolved one at a time.

A hex can be attacked only *once* per Combat Segment, and all units in that hex must be involved in the combat. The defender cannot withhold units from that combat, nor can the attacker separately attack individual units within the hex.

If defending units Retreat from one attack and end up in a hex that is the target of another attack in the same Combat Segment, they *are* included in the defense of that hex.

A phasing ground unit can attack only once per Combat Segment.

Phasing ground units do *not* have to be supplied to attack in a Combat Segment.

Phasing units in the same hex can attack different hexes. In addition, some units in the same hex can attack while others in that hex are withheld from attacking.

Ground units in hexes with enemy or friendly Air units or Airdrop markers can attack and can be attacked.

4.2.1.1 Attack Restrictions

Attack Factor Restrictions:

- A phasing unit with an Attack Factor of 0 cannot attack.
- If the attacker cannot muster at least a raw 1-3 odds ratio (see Step 3 of 4.2.2 but *exclude* any defending HQ providing Ranged Support and *all* Combat Shifts for this calculation), the attack cannot be made.

Minor Country Restrictions:

 Units from different Minor Countries cannot attack the same hex. *Exception: Exp* units can attack with any other units of the same faction.

Clarification: Not all of the Minor Country units have to be Expunits. For example, the Axis faction could have a Japanese unit, a regular Siamese unit, and a Hopeh Expunit participate in an attack. The Axis faction could not then add a regular Hopeh unit to that attack however.

Put another way, an attack may include any of that faction's Major Country units, any of one Minor Country's units, and finally any Exp units from other Minor Countries.

• A unit belonging to a Minor Country with a Free Passage (14.16), Mobilizing (14.32), or No Occupation (14.34) marker in its Capital cannot attack a hex outside that Minor Country or one of its Dependents.

Terrain Restriction:

 Units cannot attack across All-Sea hexsides. Exceptions: Supplied marine units can attack across All-Sea hexsides (4.2.1.3). Any unit can attack across an All-Sea hexside that is also a Beachhead Hexside.

Other Restrictions:

- A unit cannot attack if Pre-War (12.1) is in effect.
- Combat can be limited by Policies (13.6.1), Truces (13.6.2), and Failures (14.15).

Clarification: Axis Kwantung units can attack a hex outside a Japanese Dependent.

4.2.1.2 HQ Ranged Support

A *supplied* HQ unit has the ability to participate in combat even if it is not adjacent to the defending hex (*when attacking*) or in the defending hex (*when defending*). It does this by providing *Ranged Support*.

Design Note: Ranged Support represents the commitment of reserves, heavy equipment and local air assets to a battle.

△An HQ unit can provide Ranged Support to any combat that includes a ground unit of the same nationality as the HQ unit. **Exceptions:** A Soviet Communist Chinese HQ can provide Ranged Support to *any* Communist Chinese ground unit. A Western Nationalist Chinese HQ can provide Ranged Support to *any* Nationalist Chinese ground unit.

Clarification: An HQ unit cannot provide Ranged Support to a friendly Detachment or Logistics marker alone in a hex. An HQ unit also cannot, by itself, use Ranged Support to attack a non-adjacent hex

An HQ unit providing Ranged Support includes its Attack Factor (*when attacking*) or Defense Factor (*when defending*) to a combat within two hexes of its current location. Ranged Support also applies a CRT column shift to that attack or defense.

HQ Ranged Support Path: When providing Ranged Support a path is traced *from* the HQ unit's hex *to* the defending hex. Do *not* count the HQ unit's hex, but *do* count the defending hex.

The path cannot be traced into a hex inside a Neutral Country or Policy Affected Country, or any Dependent belonging to a Neutral Country or Policy Affected Country.

Clarification: It can be traced through a hex containing an enemy unit or across an All-Sea hex.

HQ Ranged Support Restrictions:

 An HQ unit that has participated in combat cannot provide Ranged Support to another combat later in the same Combat Segment.

Clarification: This means you can "soak off" a defending HQ by attacking its hex, thereby preventing it from providing Ranged Support to another hex.

- One HQ unit per faction can participate in an individual combat.

 Clarification: So a defending HQ unit cannot provide Ranged
 Support to a defending hex that already includes an HO unit.
- An HQ unit stacked on a Beachhead marker *cannot* provide Ranged Support except across that marker's Beachhead Hexside.

Design Note: An HQ unit on a Beachhead is considered to be deeply engaged in defending and expanding its perimeter, so it can't throw Ranged Support elsewhere.

4.2.1.3 Marine Assault

A *supplied* marine unit may attack across *any* All-Sea hexside, even without being stacked on a Beachhead marker.

4.2.2 Attack Sequence

If the attack is declared against a hex that contains an enemy Detachment or Logistics marker and *no* enemy ground units, the attack automatically succeeds. The attacker may use Advance After Combat

to enter the hex (4.2.7). No Exploitation is possible (4.2.8). Place the Detachment or Logistics marker in the Delay Box.

If the attack is declared against a hex that contains an enemy ground unit, complete these steps in order:

Step 1: The attacker chooses a hex containing an enemy ground unit and declares which adjacent phasing ground units will attack it. If the attacking units do *not* already include an HQ unit, the attacker may declare one supplied HQ unit to provide Ranged Support.

Step 2: If the defending hex does *not* have an HQ unit in it, the defender may now declare one supplied HQ unit to provide Ranged Support.

Step 3: Add up the Attack Factors of all attacking units (including an HQ unit providing Ranged Support). This is the *Attacker Total*. Add up the Defense Factors of all defending units (including an HQ unit providing Ranged Support). This is the *Defender Total*. Divide the Defender Total into the Attacker Total and express the result as one of the ratios found along the top of the Combat Results Table (CRT). Round any fractional results in favor of the defender. Odds greater than 9-1 or less than 1-3 are treated as 9-1 or 1-3 respectively.

Example: If the Defender Total was 4 and the Attacker Total was 11, the odds ratio is 2-1 after rounding off in the defender's favor. If the attacker had one more Attack Factor, he would have 3-1 odds.

Step 4: Determine the CRT *column* shifts (4.2.3) applicable to the attacker and defender. All shifts are cumulative – add all attacker shifts and then subtract all defender shifts. Apply the net column shift to the column determined in Step 3. The result is the CRT column the combat will be resolved on in Step 5. Shifts above 9-1 or below 1-3 are resolved on the 9-1 or 1-3 columns, respectively.

Design Note: Never underestimate the importance of CRT column shifts. A 3-1 attack that receives three column shifts to the right would be resolved on the 9-1 column. Woo-hoo!

Step 5: The attacker rolls one die and cross-indexes the result with the CRT column determined in Step 4. Note the Combat Result (4.2.4), modifying it for Mud, Storms, or Snow when applicable.

Step 6: Resolve any Retreats (4.2.5).

Step 7: Apply any Attrition (4.2.6) results, *first* to the attacking force, *then* to the defending force.

Step 8: If the defending hex has been vacated, surviving attacking units may now Advance After Combat (4.2.7) or conduct Exploitation (4.2.8).

Clarification: Defending units cannot advance into a hex vacated by the attacker.

4.2.3 CRT Column Shifts

4.2.3.1 Air Unit (Air Force or CV Strike)

The attacker receives a one-column shift to the right for **each** phasing Air unit (of the same nationality as at least one of the attacking units) *in* or *adjacent* to the defending hex.

The defender receives a one-column shift to the left for **each** non-phasing Air unit (of the same nationality as at least one of the defending units) *in* or *adjacent* to the defending hex.

An Air unit can provide a shift to any number of combats in the same Combat Segment.

Exceptions:

- An Air unit cannot provide a shift if the defending hex is affected by Mud.
- An Air unit *cannot* provide a shift if the defending hex is affected by Storms or Snow, *and* the Air unit is *adjacent* to that hex. An Air unit does provide a shift if it is in the defending hex itself.

Clarification: An appropriate multi-national HQ (such as the Western CBI) providing ranged support may be sufficient to claim that a unit "of the same nationality" is one of the attacking or defending units, and thus eligible for an Air unit shift.

Design Note: When placing Air units, remember they cannot be placed in the same hex or in hexes adjacent to one another. This often presents the attacker with a dilemma. To receive multiple Air Unit shifts against a single hex, multiple Air units need to be placed adjacent to the defender's hex (up to three can be placed around it). However, if an Air unit is placed in the defending hex itself, the enemy will not be able to place replacements, combine units, or move new ground units into that hex. In effect, an Air unit has interdicted that hex. The downside is that placing an Air unit directly on the defending hex means the attacker can only receive one Air unit CRT shift.

4.2.3.2 Airdrop

During the Blitz Combat Segment only, the attacker receives a onecolumn shift to the right for each Airdrop marker in the defending hex, regardless of nationality.

4.2.3.3 Armor

During the Blitz Combat Segment only, the attacker receives a onecolumn shift to the right if at least one of the attacking units is a supplied, Blitz-enabled armor-type unit.

Clarification: That's one shift total, not one per armor unit. And only during Blitz Combat, not Regular Combat.

4.2.3.4 Fortress

The defender receives a one-column shift to the left if the defending hex contains a fortress unit. It does *not* have to be supplied.

4.2.3.5 HQ

The attacker receives a one-column shift to the right if one of the attacking units is a *supplied* HQ unit (*including* one providing Ranged Support).

The defender receives a one-column shift to the left if one of the defending units is a *supplied* HQ unit (*including* one providing Ranged Support).

Clarification: Note that a defending HQ unit does contribute its defense factor (and HQ Shift) to any attack against its hex, even if it provided Ranged Support to another attack earlier in the same Combat Segment.

This shift is in addition to the combat factors contributed to the combat.

4.2.3.6 Marines

If a supplied, <u>Blitz-enabled</u> marine unit attacks *across a Beachhead*, *Strait* or *All-Sea* hexside, the attacker receives a one-column shift to the right.

Clarification: The defender still receives his column shift for the terrain. So, if a marine unit attacked across an All-Sea hexside, the net shift would be one to the left.

4.2.3.7 Mud

The defender receives a one-column shift to the left if the defending hex is affected by Mud (11.3).

Clarification: Storms and Snow do not provide a column shift.

4.2.3.8 Terrain

The defender may receive one or more column shifts to the left based on the terrain in the defending hex and along the hexside(s) separating the adjacent attacking units from that hex. See the Terrain Effects Chart on the map to determine the shifts.

Important: A *hexside* shift is in addition to those for hex terrain. However, only *one* hexside shift is applicable, and it must be the

lowest hexside shift out of all the different hexside terrain types being attacked across.

Example: A defender in a clear hex being attacked from across a river hexside in one direction, and a mountain hexside in another, receives only one shift to the left.

If the defender was in a City instead of a clear hex, it would receive two shifts to the left – one for the City and one for the river.

4.2.4 Combat Results

There are two types of results on the Combat Results Table, a *Retreat* result and an *Attrition* result.

Retreat results are always applied before Attrition results.

Clarification: Retreat results are italicized on the CRT, to remind you to perform them first.

Important: Only units involved in a specific combat are affected by its results.

Clarification: So if a unit in a hex was left out of an attack, it just sits there. It does not suffer an attacker step loss, Retreat, Advance After Combat, or anything else.

4.2.4.1 Retreat Results

Apply these before Attrition Results. See 4.2.5 on how to satisfy a Retreat result.

Ad – Attacker Defeated. All attacking ground units must Retreat one hex, *or* one of the attacking units must take a step loss (4.2.6.1). If Retreat is possible, the attacker chooses which to do.

Clarification: Yes, only one of the attacking units takes the loss.

Ex – Exchange. All attacking ground units must Retreat one hex, *or* one of the attacking ground units must take a step loss (4.2.6.1). If Retreat is possible, the attacker chooses which to do.

If the attacker Retreats, the defender does nothing.

If the attacker takes the step loss, then all ground units in the defending hex must Retreat one hex, *or* one of the defending ground units must take a step loss. If Retreat is possible, the defender chooses which to do.

Dr1, *Dr2*, *Dr3* – Defender Retreat. All ground units in the defending hex must Retreat the indicated number of *hexes*. If Retreat is not (*or is no longer*) possible, the remaining unsatisfied Retreat result is converted into step losses on a one-for-one basis until either the full Retreat result is satisfied or Retreat becomes possible again (4.2.5.3).

Weather Effects on Combat: Reduce the *Dr* result against a defending hex affected by Mud, Storms, or Snow as follows:

- Dr3 becomes Dr2
- Dr2 becomes Dr1
- *Dr1* becomes *Ex*

Ex, Ad, and Attrition results are not affected by Mud, Storms, or Snow.

4.2.4.2 Attrition Result

Apply these after Retreat Results. See 4.2.6 on how to satisfy an Attrition result.

/ # – The number to the left of the slash is the number of step losses taken by the attacker *and* is applied first. The number to the right of the slash is the number of step losses taken by the defender.

4.2.5 Retreat

The owning faction takes the Retreating unit or stack and places it in any adjacent Land hex or All-Sea hex containing a friendly Beachhead marker, as limited by Retreat Requirements below.

If necessary, the owning faction then does this again (*from the current hex*) until the Retreat result is fully satisfied.

Retreat is *not* considered movement, so ignore a unit's MA, MP costs, or movement restrictions. Retreat has its own restrictions below (4.2.5.2).

A force Retreats one hex at a time. Retreat Priorities and Retreat Restrictions are checked each time *before* the force Retreats from its current hex.

Clarification: So you don't look at every possible Retreat path all at once. Just do it one hex at a time.

Defending stacked units must Retreat together into the same hex. Attacking stacked units *that participated in the combat* must also Retreat together into the same hex. Attacking units located in different hexes do *not* have to Retreat into the same hex, but the individual stacks must remain together.

Clarification: Non-attacking units in a stack that suffers an Ad result do not Retreat.

Important: If a force Retreats into a hex containing other ground units, *all ground units* in that hex are now part of the Retreating stack *and* must be included in any remaining Retreats and Attrition results that have yet to be fulfilled.

Clarification: In other words, it's a rout! Note that just ground units are caught up in the rout, not friendly support units or markers like Detachments.

In addition, units joining a Retreat stack in this fashion *are* considered to have been involved in that original combat.

Example: A unit Retreats into a hex containing an HQ unit. That HQ is now part of the Retreating force and is considered to have participated in the combat. That means the HQ cannot provide Ranged Support to another combat later in the same Combat Segment. Doh!

Units can Retreat *out* of a hex containing an enemy Air unit or Airdrop marker.

Mud, Storms, or Snow do not affect the Retreat procedure.

Clarification: Bad weather may have affected the Retreat Result, but it won't affect how to apply it.

4.2.5.1 Retreat Priorities

The owning faction must Retreat its units into a hex that meets the following priorities, which are checked in order:

Priority 1: The hex to be Retreated into must be farther away from the defending hex than any previous hex Retreated into, and it *cannot* contain an EZOC.

Priority 2: If *no* hex exists that meets Priority 1, then the Retreat must enter a hex that is farther away from the defending hex than any previous hex Retreated into, *and* it must contain a friendly ground, Airdrop, or Air unit.

If *no* hex exists that meets Priority 1 or 2, the force *cannot* Retreat. If within a specific Priority there is more than one hex available to Retreat into, the owning faction chooses the hex.

Clarification: You may not "double back" or retreat into a hex that is not further away from the defending hex, even if an EZOC does not extend into the hex. Terrain features, such as All-Sea or Mountain hexsides, and enemy units do not affect the requirement that each hex of the Retreat be "farther away."



Example: The Japanese 15th Army in w4520 attacks the Nationalist Chinese HQ unit in Chungking (w4620) and gets an Ad result. It cannot retreat into the hexes labeled "No." Although there is no EZOC in those hexes (because of the mountain hexsides), those hexes are not further away from Chungking than w4520 is.



Example: The British unit in Akyab (w4114) must fulfill a Dr3 result. If it Retreated first to w4214 and then to Dacca (w4313), it cannot then Retreat to Calcutta (w4213) or w4314. Despite the All-Sea hexside, Calcutta is only two hexes away from Akyab, the same distance as Dacca. The unit would instead have to retreat to w4312, w4413, or w4414.

4.2.5.2 Retreat Restrictions

A force cannot Retreat if it includes a unit with a Movement Allowance of 0, *and* that unit participated in the combat.

A force cannot Retreat if it includes an HQ unit (*including* one providing Ranged Support) that participated in the combat.

A unit cannot Retreat into an Off-Map Box.

A unit cannot Retreat into a hex containing an enemy unit, Airdrop marker, or Beachhead marker.

Clarification: It can Retreat into a hex with an enemy Detachment or Logistics marker, or a friendly Airdrop or Beachhead marker.

A unit cannot Retreat across an All-Sea hexside unless it is a Strait or Beachhead Hexside (i.e., the hexside that the Beachhead marker's arrow points to).

Example: A unit in Taihoku (w4324) can Retreat into Foochow (w4424) but not into Amoy (w4323).

A unit cannot Retreat into a hex belonging to a Neutral Minor Country (13.4) or Policy Affected Country (13.6).

4.2.5.3 Retreat Conversion

Mandatory Retreat Conversion: If a Retreating force cannot (or can no longer) Retreat without violating *both* Retreat Priorities or *any* of the Retreat Restrictions listed above, that force stops Retreating. The owning faction must now convert the remaining *unsatisfied* Retreat result into step losses on a one-for-one basis until either the full Retreat result is satisfied or Retreat becomes possible again.

Example: A force suffers a Dr3 result. It Retreats two hexes into a hex with an HQ unit, which now becomes part of the Retreating force. Since a force with an HQ cannot Retreat, it must convert the last unsatisfied Retreat result into a step loss.

Design Note: You can do a lot of damage by forcing enemy units to Retreat back onto their HQ units, or by herding enemy units into an overstacked situation. Retreating units may violate Stacking Limits during and at the end of their Retreat, but such stacks will have to conform to them when that Combat Segment is over.

A force must continue Retreating again if whatever condition temporarily prevented its Retreat no longer applies, until the Retreat result is fully satisfied.



Example: The Western defending force includes the Kiangsu 9th War Zone and KMT HQ unit providing Ranged Support. It suffers a Dr3 result. The Western faction must take a step loss. It chooses the HQ, breaking it down and replacing it with a one-step infantry unit. Since the Retreating force no longer has an HQ unit, the 9th War Zone must Retreat and fulfill the other two results. It could retreat into w4723 or into w4623.

Note that the one-step Kiangsu Res infantry unit located in w4623 (where the HQ was) would not initially be considered part of the Retreating stack, so it would not have to Retreat unless the 9th War Zone chose to retreat into that hex. At that point, it would join the stack as the Retreat continues into w4722 or w4522. (The lake hexside prevents a retreat into w4622.)

Voluntary Retreat Conversion: A defending force may convert Retreat results into step losses on a one-for-one basis if either or both of the following situations applies:

- All adjacent attacking ground units are attacking across Strait, Beachhead, or Mountain hexsides.
- The *defending* hex contains a City and does *not* contain a Blitz or Totsugeki marker.

Important: Defending units Retreating *through* Cities or *across* Strait, Beachhead, or Mountain hexsides do *not* receive this Voluntary Retreat Conversion option.

Design Note: While defenders could turn an urban center like Stalingrad into a fortress, if it was on the verge of capture they would

be just as likely to declare it an "open city" and abandon it to protect the historic landmarks and civilians within. A historical example of this is Manila in 1942.

4.2.6 Attrition

A faction satisfies Attrition results by eliminating steps from any of its ground units involved in that combat (*including* an HQ unit providing Ranged Support).

To do so, the faction declares which unit will suffer a step loss and reduces its step value by one. The faction continues to eliminate steps in this fashion until the Attrition result is fully satisfied or all of its units that took part in that combat are eliminated.

Unless stated otherwise, the owning faction chooses which unit or units will lose the steps.

Clarification: So the step losses from an Attrition result can be spread among different units. But be sure to pay particular attention to the "Attacker Losses" rule below.

4.2.6.1 Attacker Losses

If an attacking force suffers losses in a combat (either through Attrition or an *Ad* or *Ex* result), it may be required to eliminate certain steps as its first loss in a combat:

- If an attacking force includes a marine unit attacking across an All-Sea, Beachhead, or Strait Hexside, the *first* step loss that force suffers must be a marine step.
- If an attacking force includes an armor-type unit, the *first* step loss that force suffers must be an armor-type step from an armor-type unit.

If *both* conditions apply, the attacker must choose between a marine or armor-type step to fulfill its "first step loss." After fulfilling any required first step loss, the owning faction may assign its remaining combat step losses as it wishes.

Clarification: If you have marine and armor units in an attack, the first loss must come from either unit, but after that you can assign the losses as you wish. You do not have to eliminate the other unit as your next loss.

Example: An attacking US force on a Beachhead consisting of a 7-6-2 three-step mech unit and a 4-4-1 two-step infantry army suffers an Ad 1/0 result. Because the force is on a Beachhead it cannot Retreat. So the Ad result must be converted to a step loss, which must be an armor step, which reduces the 7-6-2 mech to a 4-4-1 infantry unit. The required Attrition loss may be taken from either remaining unit.

4.2.6.2 Eliminating Steps

When a unit is removed from its location due to the elimination of one or more steps, it is placed in the Delay Box if it has a Delay Stripe. Otherwise, place it in its Force Pool. **Exception:** The Japanese *IG* HQ is removed from the game when eliminated.

Eliminating One-Step Units: To eliminate a one-step unit, remove it from its location.

Eliminating Steps from Two-Step Units: To eliminate a step from a two-step unit *with a one-step unit on its other side*, simply flip the unit over to its one-step side.

To eliminate a step from a two-step unit *without a one-step unit on its other side*, the owning faction takes a one-step unit from the Force Pool that could have been used to combine the two-step unit. He places it where the two-step unit is and removes the two-step unit from its location.

Clarification: This applies to a two-step unit that has a three-step unit on its other side, or nothing at all – either way it does not have a one-step unit on its other side.

Eliminating Steps from Three-Step Units: To eliminate a step from a three-step unit, simply flip the unit over to its two-step side.

Example: A US 7-6-2 three-step mech unit loses a step. The unit is flipped over to its 4-4-1 two-step side. Whether attacking or defending, that just cost an armor step.

Holding Box units: A multi-step unit that has a Holding Box in its Force Pool is reduced in steps using the above procedure *and* the corresponding units in its Holding Box.

Example: The Western two-step ABDA multi-national infantry army suffers one step loss while defending in combat. The Western ABDA Holding Box contains a Netherlands East Indies infantry unit. The Western faction can choose to eliminate the NEI unit in the Holding Box and leave the British FE infantry unit in the hex. Or it can eliminate the British FE infantry unit and take the NEI unit from the Holding Box and place it in the hex.

Eliminating Steps Restrictions:

- Elite units (2.3.4.3) cannot be taken from a Force Pool and placed in a hex or Off-Map Box *unless* that unit was *necessary* to combine into that multi-step unit.
- A player cannot switch different multi-step units in the process of eliminating steps.

4.2.7 Advance After Combat

After all results of a combat have been satisfied by both sides, if the defending hex does *not* contain an enemy unit or Beachhead marker, then a *supplied* ground unit of the attacking force can *Advance After Combat*

To do so, the attacker takes the unit and places it in the defending hex.

Advance After Combat is *not* considered movement, so ignore a unit's MA, MP costs, or movement restrictions. Advance After Combat has its own restrictions below.

Any number of the attacking supplied ground units can Advance After Combat.

Advance After Combat is conducted one unit at a time, and can continue as long as there are units eligible to perform one.

Clarification: Watch out for stacking limits! You can exceed them, but someone will die if you're still overstacked at the end of the Combat Segment.

A unit can Advance After Combat out of a hex containing an Enemy Zone of Control or an enemy Air unit.

A unit can Advanced After Combat into a hex containing any enemy marker *except* a Beachhead.

Advance After Combat is not affected by Mud, Storms, or Snow.

Advance After Combat Restrictions:

- A unit with a Movement Allowance of 0 cannot Advance After Combat.
- A unit cannot Advance After Combat into a hex it would be prohibited from entering during a Movement Phase (3.1.4). Clarification: An Axis Kwantung unit typically cannot Advance After Combat or Exploit into a hex outside a Japanese Dependent, because it cannot move into such hexes unless Russia, Communist China and Nationalist China are all not Policy Affected Countries.
- An HQ unit cannot Advance After Combat. The presence of an HQ unit in an attacking force does not prevent the non-HQ units from advancing.
- A unit that is not adjacent to the defending hex cannot Advance After Combat.

Clarification: This restriction prohibits the remnants of an HQ providing Ranged Support to the attack from Advancing After Combat.

4.2.8 Exploitation

If a supplied ground unit is eligible to conduct an Advance After Combat (but before it conducts one), and the attacking force included an armor-type unit (even if it did not survive the combat), it may conduct Exploitation instead of Advance After Combat.

To do so, the attacker takes the unit and places it in the defending hex. Then, he takes the unit (*from the current hex*) and places it in any adjacent Land hex.

The attacker may continue to do this again until the unit has gone its full Exploitation Distance. A unit is not required to go its full Exploitation Distance.

Exploitation is *not* considered movement, so ignore a unit's MP costs or movement restrictions. Exploitation has its own restrictions below.

Any number of the attacking supplied ground units can conduct Exploitation.

Exploitation is conducted one unit at a time and can continue as long as there are units eligible to perform it. All attacking units in a stack do not have to conduct Exploitation into the same hex beyond the initial defending hex.

An Exploiting unit must stop if it is placed in a hex containing an EZOC *unless* another friendly unit is in that hex, in which case it can continue.

An Exploiting unit must stop if it is placed in a hex across an All-Sea, Beachhead, Mountain, or Strait Hexside.

Design Note: Difficult terrain and combat fatigue limit pursuit.

A unit can conduct Exploitation out of a hex containing an enemy Air unit.

Exploitation is *not* affected by Storms or Snow.

Exploitation Distance: The total number of hexes an Exploiting unit can enter is equal to:

- The number of hexes the defending force *actually Retreated* (i.e., the number of different hexes it was placed in), *plus*
- The number of Retreat and/or Attrition results the defender did not satisfy in some fashion.

The defending hex *does* count as one of the Exploitation hexes.

Example: A Russian one-step ground unit suffers a Dr3 0/1 result. It Retreats three hexes and then is eliminated. The Exploitation Distance is 3. The attacking force can be placed in up to three hexes – that is, the defending hex and two other hexes.

A Russian infantry unit in Chita (w5824) suffers a Dr1 0/1 result. The Soviet faction performs an Optional Retreat Conversion (4.2.5.3) and converts the Dr1 result to a step loss, satisfying that result and eliminating the unit. The Exploitation Distance is 1 because one Attrition result is unsatisfied. In this case, Exploitation is no different than Advance After Combat.

Exploitation Restrictions:

- A unit with a Movement Allowance of 0 cannot conduct Exploitation.
- A unit cannot conduct Exploitation into a hex affected by Mud.
- The Exploitation Distance for a unit cannot exceed its Movement Allowance. If it does exceed, reduce the Exploitation Distance (for that unit only) to match the unit's MA.

Design Note: This restriction is very important. Because of the reduced MAs in DS (compared to TK), most units will not be able to Exploit, and even those that can Exploit will only get to go two hexes before stopping.

- A unit cannot conduct Exploitation into a hex it would be prohibited from entering during a Movement Phase (3.1.4).
- A unit cannot conduct Exploitation into a hex containing an enemy unit.
- A unit belonging to a Minor Country with a Free Passage (14.15), Mobilizing (14.32), or No Occupation (14.34) marker in its Capital cannot conduct Exploitation into a hex outside that Minor Country or one of its Dependents.
- A unit cannot conduct Exploitation into an Off-Map Box.
- Exploitation can be limited by Policies (13.6.1), Truces (13.6.2), and Failures (14.15).

4.3 Marker Segment

In this Segment, the phasing faction adjusts some markers on the map before conducting its Reserve Movement Phase. Perform these steps in order:

Step 1: If the phasing faction has a Troop Convoy marker in a Naval Zone's Used Box, it may move that marker back to the Naval Zone's Convoys Box.

Clarification: This will allow you to use the marker for transport during the upcoming Reserve Movement Phase.

Step 2: If the phasing faction has a Blitz, Totsugeki, Failure, or Mobilizing marker on the map, it *must* remove the marker and set it aside for future use.

△Step 3: If the Axis faction has an SNLF Beachhead-0 marker on the map, it *must* remove the marker and set it aside for future use. After all such markers have been removed, Axis ground units in an All-Sea hex *without* a friendly Beachhead marker are eliminated. Eliminated units that have a Delay Stripe are placed in the Delay Box; all others are returned to their Force Pool.

5. Reserve Movement Phase

Movement in this Phase follows the same as in the Operational Movement Phase, with the following modifications:

- An unsupplied unit can move.
- A unit cannot move into or out of a hex containing an EZOC.
- An armor unit cannot conduct an overrun.
- Important: Any unit that moves along a Road or Rail hex in an *active* enemy Major or Minor Country must pay 1 MP per hex entered.

Clarification: Reserves must move cautiously through unsecured enemy territory. One-step units can continue to move at the ½ MP per hex rate through friendly Countries, Conquered Countries, and Dependents.

Design Note: The Reserve Movement Phase is the right time to think ahead to your next Organization Segment and move ground units you want to combine into the same location.

6. Final Administrative Phase

In this Phase, the phasing faction performs some final tasks before ending its Faction Turn.

6.1 War & Peace Segment

The phasing faction performs the following in the order listed:

Step 1: It may *declare war* on Neutral Minor Countries.

Step 2: It may reduce the level of *Truce markers*.

6.1.1 Declare War

The phasing faction may select a Neutral Minor Country and activate it. If an Allied faction made the selection, it is activated as an *Axis* Country. If the Axis faction made the selection, it is activated as an *Allied* Country – see 13.5 to determine the Minor Country's alignment.

Clarification: Note this activation may end a Policy (13.6.1.2).

If a country is activated as an Axis Country during the War & Peace Segment, the Axis faction *may* place a *No Occupation* marker (14.34) in its capital.

After the Minor Country is set up (13.7), the phasing faction may declare war on another Neutral Minor Country. He may continue in this fashion until he no longer wishes to do so.

Clarification: The Axis faction does not declare war against Britain, Russia, the US, or any active Allied Minor Country. Similarly, Allied factions do not declare war on Japan or any active Axis Minor Country.

Declare War Restrictions:

- If Pre-War is in effect, a faction cannot declare war in its War & Peace Segment.
- If Limited War is in effect, an *Allied* faction cannot declare war during its War & Peace Segments.

Clarification: Remember, during Total War the Western faction can't declare war on a country at the end of its Faction Turn and have Soviet units move into it in their upcoming Faction Turn (3.1.4).

6.1.2 Reduce Truce Markers

The Posture Display may contain Truce markers that affect the Allied factions. These Truce markers may be adjusted during play.

In the War & Peace Segment of a <u>Seasonal Turn</u>, the phasing faction may reduce *all* Truce markers affecting an Allied faction by *one* level.

In the War & Peace Segment of a *Non-seasonal Turn*, the faction player may reduce *all Negotiation* markers (only) affecting an Allied faction.

Example: It is a Non-seasonal Turn and there is an Armistice marker in Russia's Posture Box, and a Negotiation marker in the British and US Posture Boxes.

Because it is a Non-seasonal Turn, the Axis faction cannot reduce the Armistice marker affecting Russia. If the Axis player chooses to reduce the Negotiation markers, he must reduce them both – he is not allowed to reduce Britain's but leave the US alone.

The Soviet or Western faction can reduce Truce markers affecting their respective faction only. The Axis player may reduce markers affecting either or both Allied factions.

Clarification: Note that the non-phasing faction has no control over these reductions.

A Truce marker level is reduced as follows:

- Remove a Reassess Policy marker and place an Armistice marker in the same Posture Box.
- Flip an Armistice marker to its Negotiation side.
- Remove a Negotiation marker.

Clarification: Reassess Policy and Armistice Truce markers have red borders to remind you they can only be reduced on <u>Seasonal Turns</u>. Also, all three Truce markers have a red, yellow, or green stoplight icon to show how close you are to fighting again.

6.2 Conditional Events Segment

The phasing faction performs the following in the order listed:

Step 1: It must check each of its Permanent Conditional Events (16.1, 16.3, 16.5) *in the order they are listed.* Only the phasing faction's Permanent Conditional Events are checked.

Clarification: You do not check Axis Permanent Conditional Events during the Western or Soviet Turns.

Step 2: It must check any events listed under **Conditional Events Segment** on its Current Card.

Important: Unless otherwise restricted or not possible, if a Conditional Event's conditions are fulfilled, that event must be implemented. The results of one event must be implemented before the next event is checked.

If an event calls for a roll on a Political Event Table, do *not* apply any Political DRMs unless specifically stated otherwise.

Conditional Replacements: These are received in *each* Conditional Event Segment, provided their conditions on the Current Card are fulfilled. They are placed per Placing Replacements (1.3.4)

Clarification: So, unlike Seasonal Replacements, you can receive Conditional Replacements each Turn of a Season.

Eliminating Steps: If the elimination of steps is required, see 4.2.6.2.

©*AE* Conditional Events: Each faction must perform *all* Conditional Event checks on the *TK* map before performing them on the *DS* map. The effects of a Conditional Event apply only on its map unless specifically stated otherwise.

© Example: When the Soviet faction performs Emergency Mobilization in TK, the Axis faction cannot apply the free Influence event it receives to a Minor Country on the DS map.

7. End of Game Turn Phase

The following occurs once per Game Turn after all factions have taken their respective Faction Turns.

7.1 Delay Segment

A *Delay Result* is determined for each counter in the Delay Box and Naval Warfare Delay Box. The Delay Result is how many turns it will take for that counter to return to play. A Delay Result less than 1 is treated as 1. There is *no* upper limit on a Delay Result.

To determine a Delay Result, select one counter from a Delay Box, roll one die, and apply the appropriate Delay DRMs based on the counter's faction. Delay DRMs are listed on the map. *Modifiers are cumulative*. The modified result is that counter's Delay Result.

Example: A Delay die roll is being made for a Russian unit. Only the Soviet Delay DRMs are applied to the roll, not ones listed under Axis or Western. You can use the DRM markers provided as a reminder of each faction's current Delay DRM.

Once a Delay Result has been determined, the counter is placed on the Turn Track that many number of Turn Boxes ahead of the current Turn Box. Do *not* count the current Turn Box.

When you are placing a counter on the Turn Track that could be considered either a unit or a marker (such as a paratroop unit/Airdrop marker), place the piece so that its unit side is face-up.

Clarification: A counter can be placed in a Turn Box that is past the Turn Box containing the V-J Day marker.

Example: It is the Delay Segment of the Sept-Oct 1943 Game Turn. A Japanese Air unit in the Delay Box is selected and a die roll is made. The result is 4.

Per the Axis Delay DRMs List, the die roll is modified as follows: The current USCL is 1, which provides a +1 DRM. Total War is in effect and the Rising Sun VP marker is in the 1 VP Box, so that's -1. The

Axis War Production marker in the Strategic Warfare Box, so that's another -1. The modified result is 3 (4+1-1-1), so the Japanese Air unit's Delay Result is 3. The Air Force unit is placed three Turns ahead on the Turn Track, in the Mar-Apr 1944 Box.

©Units leaving a Delay Box must be placed in a Turn Box on the same map.

© *Clarification:* In other words, units in a TK Delay Box stay on the TK map – they can't be placed on the DS map.

Naval Warfare Delay Box: When determining the Delay Result for a counter in the Naval Warfare Delay Box, if the unmodified die roll is 6, *roll again* and *add* the two die rolls together. Then apply the appropriate the Delay DRMs. The modified result is that counter's Delay Result.

Example: It is the Delay Segment of the Mar-Apr 1944 game turn. A British Surf Fleet unit in the Naval Warfare Delay Box is selected and a die roll is made. The result is a 6. So the Western faction rolls again, this time getting a 5. Both results are added to get 11 (6 + 5). The cumulative Western Delay DRM is -3, so the Fleet unit's Delay Result is 8. Ouch!

Design Note: This "deep six" result represents the sinking of a large number of ships, which take longer to replace. A historical example would be the loss of four Japanese carriers at Midway in 1942.

△Axis Convoy Strategy Marker: If the Axis Convoy Strategy marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, the Axis faction may perform one *Delay Reduction* (15.13) after determining its Delay Results.



7.2 Turn Marker Segment

The Turn Marker is moved to the next box on the Turn Track.

Clarification: The Turn Marker is double-sided, with an Axis side and an Allied side. You can flip the marker over after the end of the Axis and Soviet Faction Turns to remind you of whose Faction Turn it is.

If the Turn Marker is in the bottom-right corner box (i.e., Nov-Dec 1942 or 1948), move the marker to the upper-left corner box (i.e., Jan-Feb 1937 or 1943) and continue the game.

Clarification: To save space, the Turn Track "repeats itself." That is, the 1937 row of boxes is also used for 1943, 1940 stands in for 1944, and so on. If your game continues past 1948, go ahead and keep playing – just remember the year is really 1949!

All counters in the box entered by the Turn Marker are removed and placed as follows:

Step 1: Ground units, support units, Convoy markers, Detachment markers, Logistics markers, and Partisan Base markers are placed in their faction's *DS* Force Pool.

Step 2: Other markers are placed per their own rules. See Markers (14.).

Housekeeping Rules

8. Zone of Control (ZOC)

A *ground* unit projects a *Zone of Control* (ZOC) into every hex adjacent to the hex it currently occupies.

Exceptions:

• A ZOC is *not* projected into a hex across a Mountain Hexside.

 A ZOC is not projected into a hex across an All-Sea or Strait hexside, except across a Beachhead Hexside.

Clarification: If the All-Sea hex contains a Beachhead marker, but the hexside is not the marker's Beachhead Hexside, then there is no ZOC.

- A ZOC is *not* projected into a hex within a Policy Affected Country (13.6.1).
- A ground unit belonging to a Policy Affected Country does not project a ZOC.

8.1 Enemy ZOC (EZOC)

A ZOC projected by an enemy unit is referred to as an Enemy Zone of Control (EZOC).

Clarification: Remember all non-phasing units are enemy units.

In some cases (as specified below and elsewhere), the presence of a friendly unit or Airdrop marker in a hex negates the effects of all EZOC projected in that hex.

Clarification: Logistics, Partisan Base, and Detachment markers do not negate EZOC.

If a friendly unit negates EZOC, it does so immediately and for as long as it is in the hex.

Example: In the Operational Movement Phase, a ground unit move into a hex with an EZOC and stops moving. This negates the EZOC for any other friendly unit moving into that hex.

8.2 EZOC Effects

Operational Movement Phase: If a unit does *not* start a Movement Phase in an EZOC, it must stop moving when it moves *into* a hex containing an EZOC. *Exception:* A unit does not have to stop if another friendly unit is in that EZOC hex, *or* the moving unit is conducting an Overrun against the unit projecting the EZOC.

If a unit *starts* a Movement Phase in an EZOC, it can move out of that hex. It is allowed to move directly into another EZOC hex, *in which case it may have to stop per the above*.

Mud: A unit cannot move *out* of an EZOC hex affected by Mud. *No exceptions*.

Storms, Snow: A unit must stop moving after it moves *into* or *out* of an EZOC hex affected by Storms or Snow. *No exceptions*.

Reserve Movement Phase: Units *cannot* move *into* or *out* of an EZOC hex. *No exceptions*.

Supply: A supply line cannot be traced *into* an EZOC hex, *unless* another friendly unit is in the hex.

Retreat: A unit cannot Retreat into a hex containing an EZOC, *unless* another friendly unit is in that hex.

Clarification: But remember to follow Retreat Requirements (4.2.5.1). You must retreat into a hex without an EZOC if possible.

Exploitation: A unit that is conducting Exploitation must stop if it enters an EZOC hex, *unless* another friendly unit is in that hex.



Example: The British Ind colonial infantry unit in Imphal (w4415) exerts a ZOC into all hexes labeled Z. It does not exert a ZOC into the hex labeled X because of the mountain hexside between w4415 and w4416. It exerts a ZOC into the hex labeled Y, but the Japanese infantry unit there negates that EZOC for Operational Movement. That means the Japanese tank unit in Mandalay (w4215) could move to Ledo (w4515) without having to stop in w4315 or w4416.

9. Stacking

Two or more counters in the same hex are called a *stack*. Placing more than one friendly unit in the same hex is called *stacking*.

Stacking restrictions and limits apply only to hexes. Any number or combination of friendly ground units can exist together in an Off-Map Box.

9.1 Stacking Restrictions

An HQ unit cannot stack with another HQ.

A Fortress unit cannot stack with another Fortress.

Units of different Minor Countries cannot stack together. Exceptions:

- One-step *Exp* units can stack with any other units of the same faction.
- A Nationalist Chinese HQ unit can stack with any Western Chinese unit.
- A Communist Chinese HQ can stack with any Soviet Chinese unit.

Clarification: Similar to the rule regarding attacks made with Minor Country units, a stack may include any of that faction's Major Country units, any of one Minor Country's units, and finally any Expunits from other Minor Countries.

9.2 Stacking Limits

Only friendly *ground* units in a hex count toward *stacking limits*. All other counters in that hex do not count.

If a hex or Beachhead marker contains a Limited Stacking symbol (see Terrain Key) in it, up to *three* ground units with a total of *three* steps between them can be stacked in that hex.

In *all* other hexes, up to *three* ground units with a total of *six* steps between them can be stacked in the same hex.

Important: Stacking limits are enforced for *all* factions and all hexes at the end of *every* Phase and Segment.

Any stack in excess of three ground units *or* that hex's allowed number of total steps is *overstacked*. If a hex is overstacked or contains units that violate Stacking Restrictions, the owning faction must eliminate sufficient steps (4.2.6.2) to bring that hex into compliance with stacking limits.

Clarification: You are free to violate stacking limits during any Phase or Segment, but you will pay the penalty at the end. In some cases, especially during Retreats, you may have no option but to violate stacking limits.

Stacking limits occasionally force you to plan ahead too. For example, say the Western player is trying to liberate a Conquered Country (16.3.1) with some Minor Country non-Exp units. He may be better off not using Advance After Combat into the liberated City or Capital, because if he does so, he won't be able to receive the Minor Country's 0-1-1 Res infantry unit in the hex when the Minor Country reactivates during the Conditional Events Segment.

Design Note: About stacking limits and Beachhead markers. You may notice that a Beachhead can have a stacking limit of six steps, even when it's being used to attack an island like Tarawa with a stacking limit of three steps. That might seem odd, but in World War II, the determined amphibious attacker generally had the advantage – the majority of these assaults eventually succeeded. Thus, the Beachhead's extra stacking limit represents the attacker's additional logistical support committed to make the invasion succeed.

Also keep in mind that, after the defender is overwhelmed, the attacker will be limited in the number of steps he can actually move ashore. Those extra steps that remain on the Beachhead marker will have to be convoyed out of there, or the player will have to use another Support unit to keep the Beachhead afloat. Either way, he has to devote extra resources "above and beyond" the initial invasion force to keep those guys in the game.

10. Supply

A unit or markers must be able to trace a supply line in order to conduct various game mechanics, as listed in their respective rules. A unit or marker that can trace a supply line to a supply source is considered *supplied*. If it cannot, it is considered *unsupplied*.

10.1 Supply Sources

The following are supply sources:

- A Home Country City is a supply source for any counter belonging to that Country.
- A Partisan Base marker is a supply source for any counter belonging to the Minor Country in which it is located.

Example: A Partisan Base marker in Hopeh would be a supply source for only Hopeh units.

- A Western Off-Map Box is a supply source for any Western counter.
- A Soviet Off-Map Box is a supply source for any Soviet counter.

Supply Sources Restriction: A City or Partisan Base cannot be used as a supply source if its hex contains an enemy unit, Airdrop, Detachment, or Logistics marker.

10.2 Supply Line

A supply line is traced *from* the hex containing the counter *to* a supply source. Do *not* count the hex containing the counter. A supply line can be traced *out* of a hex containing an enemy unit or marker.

Clarification: If the unit occupies a hex or Off-Map Box containing a supply source, it is supplied – no need to trace a supply line.

A supply line is traced for each unit or marker at the moment supply is needed.

Clarification: When a ground unit is selected to move in the Operational Movement Phase, a check is made to see if a supply line can be traced for it. If one cannot be traced, that unit cannot move at that particular moment. If at a later time in that same Movement Phase a supply line can be traced, the unit could move then.

Two Hex Free Trace: Up to the *first* two hexes of a supply line can be traced through *any* hex that is not otherwise prohibited by Supply Line Restrictions below.

Clarification: Only the very first two hexes of a supply line can be traced across any kind of terrain. Once you start to trace supply via a Rail/Road network (see below), you can't leave that network for a hex or two and still trace supply.

Road/Rail Trace: If a supply line reaches a hex (of the owning faction's choice) containing a Road or Rail symbol, it can then be traced any distance along a series of connected Road/Rail symbols to a supply source. If Road or Rail symbols adjoin a Connected Strait, they are considered connected. *However*, the Supply Line can only be traced across *one* Connected Strait or stretch of contiguous Road hexes. Once a Supply Line crosses a Connected Strait or Road hex, it cannot later be traced across a second Connected Strait, or a Road hex separated by Rail hexes from the original Road hex.

Example: A Japanese unit in Calcutta (w4213) could not use the combination of Road and Rail hexes to trace overland supply back to Saigon, as any path it could trace would involve two separate stretches of Road hexes, the first being the stretch between Imphal/Mandalay or Ledo/Myitkyina, the second being the stretch between Moulmein and Bangkok.

Naval Zone Trace: A supply line can be traced across a Naval Zone from an Open Port to Open Port within that Naval Zone. It can continue through any number of Naval Zones in this fashion. Each Naval Zone along the supply line must contain a friendly Supply Convoy marker in its Convoys Box. Note that several Naval Zones have *inherent* Axis or Western Supply Convoy markers.

Supply Line Combinations: A supply line can be traced any distance along any combination of connected Rail hexes, one stretch of contiguous Road hexes or Connected Strait, across Naval Zones and/or between Off-Map Boxes.

Example: A British ground unit is in hex w3916. Because a Japanese Detachment marker is in Rangoon, the Western faction traces its first hex of unit's supply line into Chiengmai (w4016). The second hex is traced into w4115, which contains a Rail symbol. From there, the line is traced along connected Road and Rail hexes to Dacca, a British Open Port. From there, the Western faction traces supply across the Bay of Bengal and West Indian Ocean Naval Zones to the Europe/Africa Box, a Western Supply Source.

The Japanese Detachment in Rangoon traces supply across the Bay of Bengal, South China Sea and Yellow Sea Naval Zones (all of which contain Axis Supply Convoy markers) to Nagasaki, a Japanese Home Country Open Port and supply source.

A US Sub Fleet is in the South China Sea Naval Zone Box. Since all Ports in a Naval Zone containing an enemy Fleet unit cannot be <u>Open Ports</u>, the Axis faction cannot trace a supply line across the South China Sea Naval Zone.

Overland Supply: If a rule specifically states a unit or marker must trace an *overland supply* line, then *no part* of that supply line can be traced across a Naval Zone.

 Δ Eastern Europe Box: For purposes of tracing a supply line, hexes w5311 to w6011 along the western map edge are considered part of

the Eastern Europe Box. A supply line traced into one of those hexes is considered to have been traced to the Eastern Europe Box.

Supply Line Restrictions:

- A supply line cannot be traced into an EZOC hex unless another friendly unit is in that hex.
- A supply line cannot be traced *into* a hex containing any enemy unit, Airdrop, Detachment, or Logistics marker.
- A supply line cannot be traced into a hex that contains an enemy Partisan Base marker and does not contain a friendly ground unit.
- A supply line cannot be traced into a hex containing a City and/or Port in an enemy Country (*excluding* Conquered Allied Countries) *unless* it is under friendly <u>control</u>.
- A supply line cannot be traced into a hex in a Neutral Minor Country (13.4).
- An Allied unit or marker with a Posture of War cannot trace a supply line into a PAC hex (13.6.1.1) or use a PAC Supply Convoy.
- A supply line cannot be traced across an All-Sea hexside unless
 the hexside is a Strait hexside or is part of a hex containing a
 Beachhead marker.

Clarification: Note that you can trace supply through any hexside of a hex containing a Beachhead marker, not just the Beachhead Hexside.

10.3 Supply Effects

An HQ unit must be supplied *and* in its Home Country to be a Replacement Location (1.3.4).

 \triangle An Axis or Western Logistics marker must be able to trace a supply line to be a Replacement Location.

A Soviet Logistics marker must be able to trace an *overland* supply line to be a Replacement Location.

A ground unit, Detachment marker, or Logistics marker must be supplied to serve as an <u>Air Base</u> or <u>Naval Base</u> in the Support Segment.

Units must be supplied to combine during the Organization Segment (2.3.1).

Clarification: Unsupplied units can convert into a fortress or break down.

Only phasing supplied ground units can move in the Operational Movement Phase (3.1).

Clarification: Unsupplied units can move during the Reserve Movement Phase (5).

An Airborne unit must be supplied to conduct an Airdrop (4.1.1) in the Blitz Combat Segment.

An attacking armor unit must be supplied to provide an Armor Shift in the Blitz Combat Segment (4.1.2).

An Airdrop marker must be able to trace a supply line to be replaced by a one-step infantry unit in the Airdrop Landing part of the Blitz Combat Segment (4.1.4).

An HQ unit must be supplied to provide Ranged Support (4.2.1.2) and/or an HO Shift (4.2.3.5).

A marine unit must be supplied to reduce the number of shifts a defender receives for a Beachhead or Straits Hexside (4.2.3.6).

A unit must be supplied to Advance After Combat (4.2.7) or conduct Exploitation (4.2.8).

Example: A US Sub Fleet is in the Micronesia Naval Zone On Station Box, so all Axis Ports therein are not <u>Open Ports</u>. In his Support Segment, the Axis player places a Japanese Supply Convoy marker in the Micronesia Naval Zone Box. (He can do this because standard

Japanese Convoy Marker Placement requires a port in Japan or a Japanese Dependent, not an <u>Open Port.</u>)

"Why bother?" you ask, since the Ports are not <u>Open Ports</u>. Ah, but in the Western player's upcoming turn, he will have to remove his Sub Fleet from the map. Unless he places a new support unit in that Naval Zone, the Axis Ports will then be <u>Open Ports</u> and the supply lines to Axis units in Tarawa and Guadalcanal will be open again for the upcoming Western Combat Segment.

11. Weather

Adverse weather turns are marked on the Turn Track. There are three types of adverse weather: Mud, Storms, and Snow.

△11.1 Weather Areas

Weather affects the hexes of six different Weather Areas on the map: Desert, East Asia, North, North Monsoon, South, and South Monsoon.

Central: all Land hexes inside Formosa, Hong Kong, Kiangsu, Shanghai, Szechwan, Tibet, and Yunnan.

Desert: all Land hexes inside Australia, Kansu, Mongolia, and Sinkiang.

North: all Land hexes inside the Aleutian Islands, Hopeh, Japan (including Karafuto and the Kurile Islands), Korea, Manchukuo, and Russia (including Kamchatka, Komandorski, and Sakhalin).

North Monsoon: all Land hexes inside Burma, Ceylon, India, Indochina, Malaya, Nepal, the Philippines, and Siam.

South: all Land hexes inside New Zealand.

South Monsoon: all Land hexes inside the Netherlands East Indies (including its Dependents), Papua, and Sarawak.

△For Weather purposes, Dependents and Regions (13.3) are always considered based on their printed disposition on the map; the Weather of these areas does not change if their political situation changes.

Clarification: The Mongol Frontier region is always considered to be part of Mongolia (and the Desert Weather Area) for Weather purposes, even if it is ceded to Japan as a separate Dependent.

Beachheads: Although All-Sea hexes are not normally part of a Weather Area, an All-Sea hex containing a Beachhead marker is considered to be part of the Weather Area that the Beachhead Hexside points to.

Clarification: This is mostly to prevent attackers from claiming the ability to conduct Blitz combat against a Beachhead in bad weather.

Note that many islands in the Pacific and Indian Oceans are not part of any Weather area. These places never suffer weather effects.

11.2 Weather Effects on Combat

Reduce the *Dr* result against a defending hex affected by Mud, Storms, or Snow as follows:

- Dr3 becomes Dr2
- Dr2 becomes Dr1
- Dr1 becomes Ex.

Ex, Ad, and Attrition results are not affected.

11.3 Mud

A ground unit in a hex with Mud cannot move *out* of a hex containing an EZOC. *No exceptions*.

Clarification: Friendly units do not negate EZOC for this purpose.

Design Note: Here's a tactical tip. To disengage in Mud, attack and try to get Ad and Ex results.

A ground unit cannot attack a hex with Mud in the Blitz Combat Segment.

When attacked in a hex with Mud, the defender receives a one-column shift to the left.

A ground unit cannot conduct Exploitation into a hex with Mud.

Mud does *not* affect Retreat, Advance After Combat, or a Failure (14.15).

Clarification: Mud (and Storms and Snow) do affect the Retreat Result you receive during combat (11.2), but it doesn't affect how you conduct Retreats.

An Air unit cannot be placed in a hex with Mud.

An Air unit does *not* provide an Air Unit shift in combat if the defending hex is a hex with Mud.

△During Turns in which the North Monsoon Area is experiencing Mud, a support unit cannot be placed in an *All-Sea hex* in the Bay of Bengal, Philippine Sea, or South China Sea Naval Zones.

△During Turns in which the South Monsoon Area is experiencing Mud, a support unit cannot be placed in an *All-Sea hex* in the Arafura Sea or Bismarck Sea Naval Zones.

11.4 Storms

A ground unit in a hex with Storms must *stop* moving after moving *into* or *out* of a hex containing an EZOC in the Operational Movement Phase. *No exceptions*.

Clarification: Friendly units do not negate EZOC for this purpose. A multi-step armor unit can ignore the EZOC of a unit it is overrunning in Storms.

A ground unit cannot attack a hex with Storms in the Blitz Combat Segment.

Storms do *not* affect Retreat, Advance after Combat, Exploitation, or a Failure (14.15).

An Air unit does *not* provide an Air Unit shift in combat if the defending hex is a hex with Storms, *and* the Air unit is *adjacent* to that hex.

Clarification: An Air unit can provide an Air Unit shift in its hex during Storms (or Snow, for that matter).

11.5 Snow

A ground unit in a hex with Snow must *stop* moving after moving *into* or *out* of a hex containing an EZOC in the Operational Movement Phase. *No exceptions*.

Clarification: Friendly units do not negate EZOC for this purpose. A multi-step armor unit can ignore the EZOC of a unit it is overrunning in Snow.

<u>Blitz-enabled</u> Russian units (only) can attack defending units in Land hexes with Snow in the Blitz Combat Segment:

An Air unit does *not* provide an Air Unit shift in combat if the defending hex is a hex with Snow, *and* the Air unit is *adjacent* to that hex.

Snow does *not* affect Retreat, Advance after Combat, Exploitation, or a Failure (14.15).

During Turns in which the North Weather Area is experiencing Snow:

- An Ice hex cannot be considered a Naval Base or an Open Port.
- \(\Delta \) A support unit cannot be placed in any \(All\)-Sea \(hex \) of the Sea of Japan, Sea of Okhotsk, Northwest Pacific, North Pacific, or Gulf of Alaska Naval Zones.

Clarification: Support units can be placed in the Naval Zone Boxes of those Naval Zones during Snow.

12. War State

Each scenario's setup will indicate a *War State* that is in effect at the start. It will be *Pre-War*, *Limited War*, or *Total War*. Only one War State is ever in effect at a time, though it may change during the game.



War State is tracked on the War State Display, using the Pacific War State marker.

Changing War States: If a new War State goes into effect, all previous War State rules immediately cease to apply. The new War State rules apply until a different War State goes into effect. There is no going back to an earlier War State.

Pre-War ends and Limited War goes into effect when any of these events occurs:

- \(\Delta \) The Axis faction plays card 2a Army Plan Adopted or 2b Navy Plan Adopted.
- Any Allied Country has a Posture of War.

Pre-War or Limited War ends and Total War goes into effect when either of these events occurs:

- \(\Delta \) The Axis faction plays card 28a East Wind Rain or 28b North
 Wind Cloudy.
- \(\Delta \) The Western faction plays card 35a Arsenal of Democracy or 35b US Victory Program.
- The Axis faction makes an illegal Current Card play (1.1.1).

©**Separate War States:** In *AE*, each map has its own War State. The War State on one map may trigger certain events on the other, but they are otherwise totally separate.

© Example: At the start of the 1938 scenarios, Limited War is in effect in DS but Pre-War is in effect on the TK map.

12.1 Pre-War Effects

Asia at Peace: The Axis faction cannot end a Policy by performing certain "voluntary" actions (as defined in 13.6.1.2).

Clarification: An "involuntary" action (as defined in 13.6.1.2) that ends a Policy is okay.

No faction can Declare War in its War & Peace Segment (6.1).

No unit can move or attack outside of its Country or Dependent. No support unit or Airdrop marker can be placed in a hex, Naval Zone Box, or Strategic Warfare Box.

Clarification: A Convoy marker can be placed in a Convoys Box.

Option Card Selection Restrictions: A faction can only select a blue Pre-War Option Card.

12.2 Limited War Effects

When Limited War goes into effect: Each faction immediately places in the Delay Box any *Outbreak of War* units it has in the Conditional Event Box.

No Allied Declarations of War: The Allied factions cannot Declare War in their respective War & Peace Segments (6.1).

Clarification: Anything else that allows an Allied faction to declare war is okay.

Option Card Selection Restrictions: A faction can only select a blue Pre-War Option Card or gray Limited War Option Card.

Policy Movement Restrictions: Policy Affected Countries may be restricted in their ability to enter other Countries. See 13.6.1.1.

12.3 Total War Effects

 \triangle When Total War goes into effect: Immediately perform each of the following steps in order:

Step 1: If Total War goes into effect directly from Pre-War, each faction immediately places in the Delay Box any *Outbreak of War* units it has in the Conditional Event Box.

Step 2: The Axis faction *must* remove all Disputes, Peace, Quarantine, Resistance, and Treaty Policy markers from the Posture Display.

Step 3: The Axis faction *may* remove any Acceptance Policy markers from the Posture Display.

Step 4: The Axis faction *may* remove any Neutrality or Surrender Policy markers from the Posture Display, provided he places the appropriate Government marker in the Delay Box (14.22). The Axis faction *cannot* remove a Surrender Policy marker if its corresponding Enforced Peace marker is on the Turn Track.

Step 5: The Axis faction may remove any Truce markers from the Posture Display.

 $Step\ 6:$ Place the Increase USCL marker $three\ \underline{Seasonal\ Turns}$ ahead on the Turn Track.

Example: If Total War goes into effect in the Nov-Dec 1941 turn, the Increase USCL marker is placed in the Aug-Sept 1942 Box.

Step 7: If any of Britain, Communist China, Nationalist China or Russia are PACs, place the respective British, Communist Chinese, Nationalist Chinese and/or Russian Entry marker(s) 15 Seasonal Turns ahead on the Turn Track.

Example: Total War goes into effect in the Nov-Dec 1941 turn and there is a Neutrality Policy marker in Russia's Posture Box, which the Axis faction declines to remove in Step 4. The Russian Entry marker is placed in the Aug-Sept 1945 Turn Track Box.

*Step 8: If European Total War is not already in effect, decrease the ESV by 2 and place European Total War markers in the European War Box of both Allied factions.

© *Step 9:* Place the US Entry marker *one* <u>Seasonal Turn</u> ahead on the TK map. Do this even if the US Entry marker is already on the TK turn track for some later <u>Seasonal Turn</u>.

© Clarification: In other words, move the US Entry marker forward to the next <u>Seasonal Turn</u> if necessary.

© Example: In the historical instance, the US Entry marker is in the Mar-Apr 1942 box on the TK Turn Track when Total War breaks out on the DS map in Nov-Dec 1941. The US Entry marker is not moved, because it is already one <u>Seasonal Turn</u> ahead.

However, let's say Total War broke out on the DS map in Aug-Sept 1941. In this case, the US Entry marker would be moved to the Nov-Dec 1941 Box on the TK Turn Track.

Step 10: Place the V-J Day marker 16 <u>Seasonal Turns</u> (i.e., four Years) ahead on the Turn Track.

Example: If Total War begins in the Nov-Dec 1941 turn, the V-J Day marker is placed in the Nov-Dec 1945 Turn Track Box.

Policy Movement Restrictions: Policy Affected Countries may be restricted in their ability to enter other Countries. See 13.6.1.1.

 \triangle Conditional Events Triggered: If they have *not* yet occurred, the following Axis Option Card Conditional Events will be triggered in the next Axis Conditional Events Segment:

• Army Program (16.2.1)

- Navy Program (16.2.2)
- Economic Program (16.2.3)
- Political Program (16.2.4)

13. Factions & Countries

13.1 Factions

There are three factions in the game: *Axis*, *Western*, and *Soviet*. Anything related to one faction is considered an *enemy* to *both* other factions at all times.

The Western and Soviet factions are sometimes referred to collectively as *Allied*. This term indicates a rule that relates to one or both of those factions and *not* the Axis faction.

13.2 Countries

A Country is an area of Land hexes that has ground units associated with it. There are two types of Countries: Major Countries (13.2.1) and Minor Countries (13.2.2).

Clarification: Dependents (13.3.1) and Regions (13.3.2) do not have units, which is what makes them different from Countries.

Status, Alignment, and Posture: A Country may be said to have a *Status, Alignment,* and/or *Posture.* Status, Alignment and Posture are checked for a Country at the moment such a determination is needed.

- *Status* refers to the Country's standing as a belligerent: Active, Neutral, or Conquered (13.4).
- *Alignment* refers to which faction is responsible for the Country: Axis, Soviet, or Western (13.5)
- *Posture* refers to the country's war footing: War, Policy Affected Country, or Truce Affected Country (13.6).

Clarification: Note that Status, Alignment, and Posture are totally independent of each other. It is possible, for example, for a Neutral Country to have a Western Alignment and a Posture of War. That means the Country does not have any units set up on the board, but if it did, they would be controlled by the Western faction and able to move without being bound by Policy or Truce restrictions.

Selecting Countries: When you are instructed to select a Country, you *cannot* select a Dependent or Region.

When you are instructed to "select a Country," you may be limited to countries of certain size, Status, Alignment, or Posture.

Clarification: For example, if you are instructed to select a Neutral Minor Country, you cannot select an Active Minor Country, Conquered Minor Country or Major Country.

Any Country that does not exist at the moment of play cannot be selected for any game purpose.

Example: The Axis faction plays card 33a Treaty. Mongolia has been ceded to Russia (13.8.1), so it no longer exists. That means it can't be selected as the Country for that card's Political Event Segment.

△13.2.1 Major Countries

The Major Countries in the game are:

- Britain (consists of the Europe/Africa Box)
- Japan (consists of the Home Islands of Hokkaido, Honshu, Kyushu, and Shikoku, plus Karafuto and the Kurile Islands)
- Russia (consists of Russia, including Kamchatka and Sakhalin, any Region ceded to Russia, and the Eastern Europe Box)
- United States (also referred to as US; consists of the Western US Box)

Major Country units do not have a Nationality ID on them.

△13.2.2 Minor Countries

The Minor Countries that may appear in the game, and their abbreviated Nationality ID, are:

- Amur (Am)
- Australia (Aus)
- Bangladesh (Bang)
- Burma (Bur)
- France (Fra)
- Hopeh (Ho)
- India (Ind)
- Indochina (Indo)
- Kamchatka (Kam)
- Kansu (Kan)
- Kiangsu (Ki)
- Korea (Kor)
- Malaya (Mal)
- Manchukuo (Man)
- Mongolia (Mong)
- Netherlands East Indies (NEI, consists of the islands of Sumatra, Java, Lesser Sunda Islands, and Timor)
- New Zealand (NZ)
- Pakistan (Pak)
- The Philippines (Phil)
- Primorye (Prim)
- Siam (Siam)
- Siberia (Sib)
- Sinkiang (Sin)
- Szechwan (Sze)
- Tannu Tuva (TT)
- Tibet (Tib)
- Trans-Baikal (TB)
- Yunnan (Yun)

13.3 Dependents and Regions

Dependents and Regions are areas of Land hexes that do *not* have units associated with them. A Dependent or Region can never independently be considered to be the "Home Country" of any unit.

Clarification: A Dependent or Region may become a Minor Country, see 13.8.2.

Dependents and Regions are *not* Countries for game purposes. A Dependent or Region *cannot* be selected for any instruction that calls for a player to select a Country. You may select a Dependent or Region only when specifically allowed.

Example: The Axis player plays card 33b Puppet Government. He may apply the card's event to Korea, because it is a Dependent and all of its Cities are under Axis <u>control</u> at the moment. If he had played 33a Treaty instead, he could not name Korea, because it is not a Minor Country.

A Dependent or Region cannot be independently conquered or liberated.

Design Note: The distinction between Countries, Dependents, and Regions is important for rules purposes, as it helps us avoid rules anomalies, exceptions, and odd gaming situations.

△13.3.1 Dependents

A Dependent's alignment (13.5) is the same as its associated Major or Minor Country. A Dependent is often referred to in terms of the Major or Minor Country that it belongs to.

Example: Hong Kong is a Dependent of Britain, so it's referred to as a "British Dependent."

If France is Neutral, so are all French Dependents (Indochina and New Caledonia), and thus no unit is allowed to move into any of those places. If France is a Western Country, then its Dependents are all Western Dependents, even if they are completely occupied by enemy units.

The Dependents that may appear in the game and their possible associated Countries are:

- Addu Atoll (British)
- Aleutian Islands (US or Japanese)
- Amur (Japanese)
- Australia (British)
- Borneo (NEI)
- Burma (British or Japanese)
- Celebes (NEI, includes Ternate and Amboina)
- Ceylon (British)
- Christmas Island (British)
- Diego Garcia (British)
- Dutch New Guinea (NEI)
- East Turkestan (Russian)
- Eastern Caroline Islands (Japanese, British, or US)
- Fiji (British)
- French Frigate Shoals (US)
- Formosa (British or Japanese)
- Funafati (British)
- Gilbert Islands (British)
- Guam (US or Japanese)
- Johnston Island (US)
- Hawaiian Islands (US)
- Hong Kong (British or Japanese)
- India (British)
- Indochina (French or Japanese)
- Inner Mongolia (Japanese)
- Kamchatka (Japanese)
- Kansu (Japanese)
- Kiangsu (Japanese)
- Komandorski (Russian)
- Korea (Japanese or Russian)
- Liaoning (Russian)
- Line Islands (British)
- Malaya (British or Japanese)
- Male (British)
- Manchukuo (Japanese)
- Marcus Island (Japanese)
- Marshall Islands (Japanese, British, or US)
- Midway (US or Japanese)
- Mongol Frontier (Japanese)
- Mongolia (Russian)
- Nepal (British)
- New Caledonia (French)
- New Hebrides (British)
- New Zealand (British)
- Papua (British or Japanese)
- Philippines (US or Japanese)
- Phoenix Islands (British)
- Port Blair (British)
- Primorye (Japanese)

- Sakhalin (Japanese)
- Sarawak (British or Japanese)
- Shanghai (Japanese)
- Siberia (Japanese)
- Solomon Islands (British includes Admiralty Islands)
- Tonga (British)
- Trans-Baikal (Japanese)
- Uvea (French)
- Wake (US or Japanese)
- Western Caroline Islands (Japanese, British, or US)
- Western Samoa (US)

Mandate Dependents: Aleutian Islands, Burma, Guam, Hong Kong, Malaya, Midway, Papua, the Philippines, Sarawak, and Wake are sometimes identified as Mandate Dependents in the rules.

△13.3.2 Regions

A Region is an area of Land hexes that are part of a larger Country or Dependent. A Region may become part of a different Country, or become a separate Dependent.

Clarification: If there is no Ceded Land marker for a particular Region in the Ceded Lands Box, that Region is part of its original Country or Dependent.

A Region is outlined with its own Border hexside symbol (see Terrain Key).

The Regions that may appear in the game and their starting dispositions are:

- Amur (part of Russia)
- Bangladesh (part of India)
- East Turkestan (part of Sinkiang)
- Hainan (part of Kiangsu)
- Heilungkiang (part of Manchukuo)
- Inner Mongolia (part of Hopeh)
- Jehol (part of Manchukuo)
- Kamchatka (part of Russia, includes Komandorski)
- Karafuto (part of Japan)
- Kirin (part of Manchukuo)
- Liaoning (part of Manchuko)
- Mongol Frontier (part of Mongolia)
- Pakistan (part of India)
- Primorye (part of Russia)
- Sakhalin (part of Russia)
- Siberia (part of Russia)
- Trans-Baikal (part of Russia)

Far East Regions: Amur, Kamchatka, Primorye, Siberia, and Trans-Baikal are sometimes identified as Far East Regions in the rules.

13.4 Country Status

A Major Country always has a status of Active. A Minor Country may have a status of Active, Neutral, or Conquered.

Neutral Minor Countries: If a Minor Country is Neutral, its units and markers are set aside and cannot be placed on the map.

A Neutral Country is activated under either of the following conditions:

- It is selected in the Declare War part of a faction's War & Peace Segment (6.1.1).
- An option card, Political Event, or Conditional Event calls for a Neutral Country to be activated as an Axis or Allied Country.

Activation of a Neutral Country immediately changes its status to Active. The alignment of the Minor Country is determined (13.5) and its units and markers are set up (13.7).

Conquered Minor Countries: If a Minor Country is Conquered, its units are placed in its faction's Conquered Minor Countries Box and cannot be placed on the map.

A Conquered Country may be re-activated under either of the following conditions:

- The Axis faction performs the *Minor Country Created* Political Event (15.25).
- An Allied faction performs its *Conquered Country Reactivation* Conditional Event (16.3.1, 16.5.1).

Re-activation of a Conquered Country immediately changes its status to Active. The Minor Country's units are moved from the Conquered Minor Countries Box to the Force Pool and may be set up on the map per the event.

13.5 Country Alignment

Countries are aligned as follows:

- △Axis: Japan and all Axis Minor Countries.
- Western: Britain, the United States, and all Western Minor Countries
- Soviet: Russia and all Soviet Minor Countries.

A Major Country is always aligned with its proper faction. It *cannot* switch its alignment.

A Minor Country can be aligned with any faction, and may switch its alignment to a different faction.

Determining Alignment of Neutral Minor Countries: The

alignment of a Neutral Minor Country is determined at the moment it is needed, using this priority list:

Priority 1: If an option card, rule or event specifies a faction, the Neutral Minor Country aligns with that faction.

Priority 2: If a Soviet or Western Influence marker is in the Country, it aligns with the Allied faction shown on the marker.

Priority 3: If the country does *not* share a Border with any Soviet Country, it aligns with the Western faction.

Priority 4: If Pre-War is in effect, the Axis player *must* choose an Allied faction for the Country to align with.

Priority 5: If the Country does *not* contain an Axis or Western Strategic Hex, it aligns with the Soviet faction.

Priority 6: Roll an unmodified die. If the result is 3 or less, it aligns with the Western faction. If it is 4 or more, it aligns with the Soviet faction

Example: It is the May-June 1937 turn, Pre-War is in effect, and the Axis faction reveals Card 8 Demand Inner Mongolia. The Political Event Die Roll is Country Resists (15.10), so Hopeh's alignment must be determined.

The card and event that triggered Hopeh's entry do not specify an alignment for the country (Priority 1), nor does it contain an Allied Influence marker (Priority 2). Hopeh does share a Border with Kansu, a Soviet country, so Priority 3 doesn't apply.

That brings us to Priority 4. Pre-War is in effect, so the Axis faction gets to pick Hopeh's alignment. The Western faction is chosen.

Determining Alignment of Active and Conquered Minor

Countries: The alignment of an Active or Conquered Minor Country can generally be determined by the placement of its units in a faction's Force Pool or Conquered Minor Countries Box, respectively.

Clarification: Occasionally, an Active Country may have built all its units on the board and have nothing remaining in its faction's Force Pool – but that Country remains aligned with its faction.

13.6 Country Posture

An Axis Country always has a Posture of War.

An Allied Country's Posture will be *one* of War, a Policy, or a Truce. The Posture of an Allied Country is tracked on the map's Posture Display. If a Country's Posture Box contains a Policy or Truce marker, that Policy or Truce marker is its Posture. If there is no marker, its Posture is *War*.

Example: If the United States Posture Box has a Quarantine marker in it, the US Posture is Quarantine.

If Russia's Posture Box has no marker in it, Russia's Posture is War.

A Posture Box may not have both a Truce marker and a Policy marker in it – just one of either, or none at all.

△The Nationalist China, Britain, and US/Western Minor Posture Boxes are considered to be friendly to the Western faction. The Nationalist China Box tracks the Posture for *all* Western Chinese Countries. The US/Western Minors Posture Box tracks the Posture for the US and all *other* Western Minors.

△The Communist China, Soviet Minors, and Russia Posture Boxes are considered friendly to the Soviet faction. The Communist China Box tracks the Posture for all Soviet Chinese Countries. The Soviet Minors Box tracks the Posture for all *other* Soviet Minor Countries.

©The Posture of a Country on one map has *nothing* to do with its Posture on the other map. That is, a Country may be at War on the *TK* map but under a Policy or Truce on the *DS* map and vice versa.

13.6.1 Policies

△There are eight Policies, each with corresponding markers:

- Acceptance
- Border Disputes ("Disputes" for short)
- Lapsed Treaty ("Treaty" for short)
- Neutrality Pact ("Neutrality" for short)
- Ouarantine
- Resistance
- Surrender
- Uneasy Peace ("Peace" for short)

Clarification: The shortened terms are used on the option cards and in the rules to save space.

If a Posture Box contains a Policy marker, that Policy is in effect and its rules apply. If placed during the game, its rules are immediately in effect. If removed during the game, its rules immediately end.

If an Allied Country's Posture Box contains a Policy marker, that Allied Country is said to be a *Policy Affected Country* (PAC). A Policy affects all of a PAC's units and markers, and applies in all Land hexes belonging to that Country *or* its Dependents.

Example: If Russia's Posture is Disputes, then Russia is a PAC. This means all Russian units and markers, and all Land hexes inside Russia and all Russian Dependents, are affected by the Disputes policy.

13.6.1.1 Policy Effects

These rules apply while any Policy is in effect.

Current Strategic Value:

 Axis Strategic Hexes under Allied <u>control</u> in an active PAC are not counted when determining the Current Strategic Value (0.1.1).

Support Unit or Airdrop Marker Placement:

- An Allied support unit or Airdrop marker with a Posture of War cannot be placed in a PAC hex.
- A PAC support unit or Airdrop marker cannot be placed in a hex, On Station Box, or the Strategic Warfare Box.
- A PAC support unit cannot contest attempted placement of an enemy support unit *unless* that placement ends the policy affecting the PAC unit (in which case it is no longer a PAC unit).

Example: Russia's Posture is Neutrality. The Axis faction attempts to place a Japanese Air Force unit in a hex in Russia. This attempted placement immediately ends the Neutrality Policy, which allows the Soviet faction to contest it.

Movement: These restrictions apply during both Movement Phases.

- An Allied ground unit with a Posture of War cannot move into a PAC hex. Also, such an Allied unit cannot use a PAC Troop Convoy marker.
- If *Pre-War* is in effect, a PAC ground unit cannot move into a hex *unless* it is within its Home Country or any of its Dependents. Also, a PAC unit cannot use a *Troop* Convoy marker *unless* it is of the same nationality.

Example: Russia and Soviet Minors both have a Posture of Neutrality. A Russian ground unit cannot move into a Russian Minor Country.

• If *Limited* or *Total War* is in effect, a PAC ground unit cannot move into a hex *unless* it is affected by the same Policy. Also, a PAC unit cannot use a Troop Convoy marker *unless* it is affected by the same Policy.

Example: Siam is a Western Country and its Posture is Quarantine. A Siamese ground unit can move only into a country with a Posture of Quarantine.

Russia's Posture is Neutrality. A Russian ground unit cannot move into a Conquered Allied Hopeh because Hopeh does not have a Posture of Neutrality.

Combat:

- A PAC ground unit cannot participate in an attack.
- An Allied ground unit with a Posture of War cannot attack a PAC ground unit.
- An *Allied* ground unit with a Posture of War cannot Retreat or Advance After Combat, or Exploit into a PAC hex.

Delay DRMs:

• Certain Delay DRMs are not applied (7.1).

Zone of Control:

• A PAC ground unit does *not* project a ZOC.

Example: Britain's Posture is Treaty. A British ground unit does not project a ZOC.

• ZOC is *not* projected into a PAC hex.

Example: Britain's Posture is Treaty. An Axis ground unit does not project a ZOC into a hex within any British Country or Dependent.

Supply:

- An *Allied* unit or marker with a Posture of War cannot trace a supply line through a PAC hex (10.2). Also, such an Allied unit cannot use a PAC Supply Convoy marker.
- If Pre-War is in effect, a PAC unit or marker cannot trace supply through a Land hex unless that hex is within its Home Country or any of its Dependents. Also, a PAC unit cannot use a Supply Convoy marker unless it is of the same nationality.
- If *Limited* or *Total War* is in effect, a PAC unit or marker cannot trace supply through a Land hex unless that hex is in a Country or Dependent affected by the same Policy. Also, a PAC unit

cannot use a Supply Convoy marker *unless* it is affected by the same Policy.

Policy Violation Internment: At the end of any Conditional Events Segment, a unit in a Country that it could not move into or be placed in due to one of the above rules may be interned (16.7).

13.6.1.2 Ending a Policy

Important: When a Policy ends, *all* of that Policy's markers are immediately removed from that map's Posture Display.

Example: The Axis plays card 28b North Wind Cloudy, which triggers Total War and ends Russia's Disputes Policy. If that same Policy appears in another Posture Box (such as the Soviet Minors Box), you'd remove that Policy marker as well.

If you are instructed to replace any Policy marker with a Truce marker, replace *all* of that Policy's markers with Truce markers.

Involuntarily Ending a Policy: A Policy is considered to have been "involuntarily" ended when:

 \(\Delta \text{A Border Incident (15.4), Country Resists (15.10), Declare War (15.12), Gekokujo (15.17), or International Incident (15.20) Political Event results in the ending of a Policy.

Example: Resistance markers are in the Communist China and Nationalist China Posture Boxes and the Axis player plays card 8 Demand Inner Mongolia.

The Axis Political Event result is Country Resists (15.10), and Hopeh is activated as a Western Country. Since Hopeh is a PAC, the Resistance markers are immediately removed from the Posture Display, thus ending the Resistance Policy. The "China Incident" has triggered a land war in Asia!

 An Axis unit or Detachment is in an Active or Neutral PAC hex and the Axis player chooses to not intern that counter (16.7) in any faction's Conditional Events Segment.

Clarification: An Axis unit can be in a Conquered PAC hex without ending that Policy.

- An option card is revealed that ends a Policy.
- \text{\Delta Total War goes into effect and the Policy is Disputes, Peace, Quarantine, Resistance or Treaty (12.3).

Voluntarily Ending a Policy: A Policy is considered to have been "voluntarily" ended when:

- An Axis support unit attempts placement in an Active PAC hex.
- An Axis support unit attempts placement adjacent to an Active
 PAC hex, unless that hex is also in or adjacent to another Allied
 Country with a Posture of War. (See the Clarification below.)
- An Axis support unit attempts placement in the On Station Box of a Naval Zone that contains an Active PAC Port, unless another Allied Country with a Posture of War also has a Port in that Naval Zone. (See the Clarification below.)

Example: Britain's Posture is Treaty and Kiangsu's Posture is War. If the Axis player places a Japanese support unit in the South China Sea Naval Zone Box, it does not end Britain's Treaty.

• An Axis ground unit enters an *Active* PAC hex.

Example: Britain's Posture is Treaty. If the Axis faction moves a Japanese ground unit into any British Dependent, it ends Britain's Treaty.

- An Axis ground unit attacks a PAC unit.
- The Axis faction declares war on a Neutral PAC in the War & Peace Segment (6.1).
- A *Neutrals Pressured* (15.28) or *Political Option* (15.30) Political Event is applied to a Policy.

 \Delta The Axis faction chooses to end an Acceptance, Neutrality, or Surrender Policy when Total War goes into effect (12.3).

Voluntarily Ending a Policy Restrictions: Any action listed immediately above that would violate these restrictions is prohibited.

- No faction can voluntarily end any Policy if Pre-War is in effect.
- \Delta The Axis faction cannot voluntarily end a Neutrality or Surrender Policy unless he can simultaneously place the appropriate Government marker in the Delay Box (14.22).
- \(\Delta\) In addition, the Axis faction cannot voluntarily end the Surrender Policy at all if the PAC's Enforced Peace marker is on the Turn Track.

Example: The Axis faction cannot end a Neutrality Policy with Russia unless the Army marker is in the Government Holding Box. If Russia's Policy was Surrender and the Enforced Peace marker was on the Turn Track, the Axis faction could not end that Policy.

Voluntarily Ending a Policy Clarification: If an Axis unit is placed in a hex or On Station box in such a way that more than one Policy could possibly be ended, the Axis faction chooses the order in which Policies are checked. The first Policy checked *must* be ended; after that, the Axis faction may keep the other Policies in place since there is now an active Allied County with a Posture of War.

Example: Limited War is in effect, Britain and the US are both PACs, and the Axis faction attempts to place a Surface Fleet in the On Station Box of the Southeast Pacific Naval Zone. Since Britain and the US both have Ports within that Naval Zone, the Axis faction must end one of the US or British Policies; it gets to choose which one.

Design Note: The restrictions on ending Policies exist to make players think like government leaders instead of wargamers. You're not allowed to declare war on somebody without first using threats and diplomacy to get away with as much as you can.

13.6.2 Truces

There are three Truces, each with corresponding markers. They are *Reassess Policy, Armistice,* and *Negotiation*.

If a Posture Box contains one of these Truce markers, that Truce is in effect and its rules apply. If placed during the game, its rules immediately apply. If removed during a game, its rules immediately end.

If an Allied Country's Posture Box contains a Truce marker, that Allied Country is said to be a *Truce Affected Country* (TAC). A Truce affects all of a TAC's units and markers, and applies in all Land hexes belonging to that Country *or* its Dependents.

Because Axis Countries always have a Posture of War, they can *never* be considered a TAC. **However (and Very Important):** Axis units *are* reciprocally bound by all TAC restrictions unless otherwise specified.

Clarification: When you read a restriction in 13.6.2.1 or 13.6.2.2 below, you can switch the words "TAC" and "Axis" to find out the restriction applies to the Axis. For example, the first bullet under Combat in 13.6.2.1 would be applied as: "An Axis ground unit cannot attack a hex containing a TAC ground unit."

13.6.2.1 Reassess Policy & Armistice

These rules apply while a Reassess Policy or Armistice is in effect.

Support or Airdrop Marker Placement:

- A TAC support unit or Airdrop marker cannot be placed in or adjacent to a hex in an Axis Country or Dependent, *or* in a hex containing an Axis ground unit, Detachment or Logistics marker.
- A TAC support unit cannot be placed in the On Station Box of a Naval Zone containing a Port in an Axis Country or Dependent

unless an active Allied Country with a Posture of War also contains a Port in that Naval Zone.

- A TAC unit cannot contest attempted placement of an Axis support unit.
- A TAC support unit or Airdrop marker cannot be placed in a PAC hex.

Movement:

- In the Operational Movement Phase, a TAC ground unit cannot move into an Axis ZOC unless another friendly unit is present in that hex.
- In either Movement Phase, a TAC ground unit cannot move into a hex containing an Axis Detachment or Logistics marker.
- In either Movement Phase, a TAC ground unit cannot move into a PAC hex.

Combat:

- A TAC ground unit cannot attack a hex containing an Axis ground unit.
- A TAC ground unit cannot Retreat into a hex containing an Axis Detachment or Logistics marker.
- An Allied TAC ground unit cannot attack a PAC unit.

Clarification: Note that Axis units are not "reciprocally bound" in this case.

Example: If Britain is under a Reassess Policy Truce and Russia is under the Disputes Policy, British units are prevented from attacking Russian units under this rule, but Axis units are not.

• A TAC ground unit cannot Retreat, Advance After Combat, or Exploit into a PAC hex.

Delay DRMs:

• Certain Delay DRMs are not applied (7.1).

13.6.2.2 Negotiation

These rules apply while a Negotiation is in effect.

Support or Airdrop Marker Placement:

- A TAC support unit or Airdrop marker cannot be placed in or adjacent to a hex in an Axis Country or Dependent, or containing an Axis ground unit, Detachment marker, or Logistics marker.
- A TAC support unit or Airdrop marker cannot be placed in a PAC hex.

Movement:

- In the Operational Movement Phase, a TAC ground unit cannot move into an Axis ZOC unless another friendly unit is present in that hex.
- In either Movement Phase, a TAC ground unit cannot move into a PAC hex.

Combat:

- A TAC ground unit cannot attack a PAC unit.
- A TAC ground unit cannot Retreat, Advance After Combat, or Exploit into a PAC hex.

Delay DRMs:

• Certain Delay DRMs are not applied (7.1).

Design Note: Unlike the other Truces, Negotiation is a lot less restrictive. If you want to avoid combat with a Negotiation in effect, you need an empty hex between your units and the enemy.

13.6.2.3 Reducing and Increasing Truce Markers

A faction may be able to reduce the level of a Truce marker in a Posture Box by *one* level during its War & Peace Segment (6.1.2).

Some Political Events results allow a player to reduce or increase the current level of a Truce marker in a Posture Box by *one* level.

A Truce marker is reduced as follows:

- Remove a Reassess Policy marker and place an Armistice marker in the same Posture Box.
- Flip an Armistice marker to its Negotiation side.
- Remove a Negotiation marker.

A Truce marker is *increased* as follows:

- Flip a Negotiation marker over to its Armistice side.
- Remove an Armistice marker and place a Reassess Policy marker in the same Posture Box.

Clarification: Unlike reducing Truce markers during the War & Peace Segment (6.1.2), there are no <u>Seasonal Turn</u> restrictions to reducing or increasing a Truce marker through a Political Event.

13.7 Country Setup

Major Countries are always set up at the beginning of the game according to the instructions of the scenario being played.

13.7.1 Normal Minor Country Setup

When a Neutral Minor Country is activated during play, follow this procedure. **Exception:** If you are setting up *France*, see 13.7.2.

Clarification: These setup instructions apply only to Neutral Minor Countries, not to Conquered Minor Countries being reactivated (16.3.1, 16.5.1) or liberated (16.3.2, 16.3.6, 16.4.1, and 16.5.2).

Step 1: Place its 0-1-2 *Res* infantry unit in the faction's Force Pool.

Step 2: Place in the Delay Box any of its units with Delay Stripes *except* for fortress units.

Clarification: Chinese port-a-fort units go in the Delay Box.

Step 3: Place any garrison and fortress units it may have in the appropriate hexes (2.3.2.4).

Step 4: Place all of its remaining ground units in or adjacent to City and/or Port hexes within the activated Country. All units must be placed with their *one-step side face up*. All placement in Steps 3 and 4 is limited to one unit per hex.

Step 5: If the Minor Country was activated by *Free Passage* (15.16), place a Free Passage marker in the country's Capital. In *all* other cases, place a Mobilizing marker in the country's Capital. Place these markers with the appropriate faction side face up.

 \triangle **Step 6:** Perform a Mobilization Roll for the country unless:

- it was activated by the *Coup D'etat* (15.11) Political Event.
- it was activated by the *Free Passage* (15.16) Political Event.
- the country is France.

Step 7: Remove any Influence or Neutrality markers in the Minor Country.

Mobilization Roll: The faction controlling the activated Minor Country may roll one die. *Do not apply any DRMs to this roll.* The result is the total number of Mobilizations the Minor Country receives.

Each Mobilization may be used by the controlling faction to flip one one-step unit to its two-step side. The controlling faction does not have to flip any unit, and may flip less than the total allowed.

Clarification: Some countries have only a Res unit and nothing else. So they don't set anything up on the map.

△13.7.2 Minor Country Setup Exception

△France: If France is activated as a Minor Country, place one French 0-1-0 garrison infantry in Saigon (w3619) and one French Detachment in Noumea (e1913). Place one French 0-1-1 infantry [Res] and one French 0-1-1 colonial infantry unit [Col] in the faction's Force Pool. France does not receive a Mobilization Roll.

Exception: If Indochina is a Japanese Dependent or Minor Country, do not place the garrison infantry in Saigon – place it in the Force Pool instead.

13.8 Additional Country Rules 13.8.1 Ceding Lands

A Country, Dependent, or Region may have a *Ceded Land* marker. If this marker is in the *Ceded Lands Box*, that indicates a change in ownership of that area.

Clarification: A Ceded Lands marker in a faction's Force Pool does not indicate a change in that area's ownership.

If a Ceded Lands marker says a particular area has been "ceded to" a Country, that area is part of the Country named on that marker.

Example: If the Russian Heilungkiang Ceded Land marker is in the Ceded Lands Box, then Heilungkiang is part of Russia because the marker says the area has been ceded to Russia.

If a Ceded Lands marker says a particular area is a "Dependent" of a Country, that area is a Dependent of that Country.

Example: If the Japanese Inner Mongolia Ceded Land marker is in the Ceded Lands Box, then Inner Mongolia is a Japanese Dependent because the marker says it is a Japanese Dependent.

Certain game events may place these markers in the Ceded Lands Box, or remove them from that Box. The control of a Ceded Land immediately changes when its marker is placed or removed.

△13.8.1.2 Mongolia and Tannu Tuva

If one of these Countries is ceded to Russia, its units are immediately removed from play and it ceases to exist as a Country. Once removed from play, these Countries *can* be re-created with the *Minor Country Created* Political Event (15.25).

13.8.2 Creating Minor Countries

Certain Dependents and Regions, and *all* Conquered Countries, are eligible to be created as *Axis* Minor Countries by play of Axis cards 33b and 34b *Puppet Government*.

The Philippines and India may also be created as *Neutral* Minor Countries by Western cards 8a *Philippine Independence* and 9a *Indian Independence*, respectively.

The following Dependents and Regions are eligible to become Minor Countries:

- Amur
- Australia
- Bangladesh
- Burma
- Ceylon
- India
- Indochina
- Kamchatka
- Korea
- Malaya
- Manchukuo
- Mongolia
- New Zealand
- Pakistan
- The Philippines
- Primorye
- Siberia
- Sinkiang
- Trans-Baikal

Clarification: Note that Kansu and Kiangsu cannot be created as Axis Minor Countries should those Countries become Japanese Dependents.

13.8.3 Multi-National Units & Pan-National

Multi-National Units: Some ground units in the game are *multi-national* units. When in play, a multi-national unit is considered to belong to *both* nationalities represented by the unit. So any rule that applies to either one of its nationalities applies to that multi-national unit.

Clarification: You get the all the benefits and penalties of each nationality. For example, say the Western ABDA unit consists of a British and NEI unit. In order to be supplied, it must trace a supply line to both a British supply source and an NEI supply source (though it does not have to be the same exact supply line). The unit could not stack with an Allied Kiangsu unit (unless it was a Exp unit).

When a step belonging to one of the nationalities of a multi-national unit is removed from the game due to a Conditional Event, the owning faction must perform an Emergency Breakdown (2.3.4). The remaining component unit remains on the map.

 \triangle The following are multi-national units:

- Axis AEx HQ unit: Japanese and Axis Minor Country.
- Western ABDA unit: British and Western Minor Country.

 Clarification: You cannot use British colonial units to build the ABDA army.
- Western Chin airborne unit: British and US.
- Western CBI HQ unit: British and US.

Pan-National Units: The Allied Chinese HQ units are *pan-national* units. During play, the owning faction may consider a pan-national unit to belong to *any* friendly Chinese nationality as required. So any rule that applies to one of the faction's Chinese nationalities may or may not apply to the pan-national unit as the faction wishes and the situation dictates.

Example: In simple terms, this means that a friendly pan-national Chinese HQ can support or stack with any friendly Chinese unit. A pan-national HQ within a friendly Chinese country can also be used as a replacement location for units of that country.

Furthermore, let's say a Total War Minor Country Politics Political Event (15.26) has forced the Western faction to eliminate two Kiangsu steps, and that Kiangsu and Szechwan are friendly Chinese countries. The Western faction may choose whether or not to lose steps from one of his pan-national HQs; he does not have to do so, even if one of these HQs is in Kiangsu or there aren't enough Kiangsu steps elsewhere to eliminate. That's because he can claim the pan-national HQs to be from Szechwan here. If Kiangsu is the only friendly Chinese minor country, then he would not have this choice.

△The following are pan-national units:

- Soviet CCP and Cen HQ units: Soviet Chinese Country.
- Western Cen and KMT units: Western Chinese Country.

△13.8.4 France

Design Note: France is an unusual Minor Country in that its Home Country is entirely off-map, but it has Dependents on the DS map.

France can never be conquered, but it is otherwise treated as a normal Minor Country. Any marker that would normally be placed in its Capital (such as a Neutrality marker) is placed in Noumea instead.

©In AE, France/Vichy is activated on each map separately. France is always considered "France" on the DS map; it can never be collapsed or conquered. If France has become "Vichy" on the TK map, it is

considered to be a *different* country than France on the *DS* map in all respects.

©If the *Case Yellow* Conditional Event is applied to France on the *TK* map, remove *all* non-F French units from *DS*.

© Example: It is the Nov-Dec 1941 turn. The Western Faction chooses to invoke the French Response Western Conditional Event, which activates France as a Western Country on the DS map. On the TK map, Vichy is a Neutral Country, and it remains that way.

*13.8.5 Germany

Design Note: In DS, the course of the European War is handled abstractly through European War Markers, Allied faction card play, and Political Events. Depending on how these events unfold, the Allied players may need to send support units to that theater.

The Allied factions use the European War Display to track the current status of the European War and units serving in that theater. The European War Display contains the European Holding Box and two European War Boxes.

European Holding Box: Support units that have been sent "to Europe" through *European Commitment* Political Events (15.14.1) are placed here until they are able to return to play. A unit in this box is considered to be "out of play" until is returned to the Delay Box by a future *European Commitment* Event.

European War Boxes: The European War Status of an Allied faction is tracked in its European War Box. An Allied faction's European War Status will be *one* of No War, Limited War or Total War.

If a faction's European War Box contains a European War marker, that marker is its European War Status. If there is no marker, its European War Status is No War.

Current ESV Track: The Current ESV Track charts the progress of the European War. Each box on the track has a number; that number is the "Current ESV" when it contains the Current ESV or Germany Surrenders marker. The Current ESV may be added to the Current Strategic Value in Victory Point Checks (0.1.1).

Clarification: If the Current ESV is a positive number, Germany is winning its war. If the Current ESV is negative, the Allies are winning.

Players may be instructed to "increase ESV" or "decrease ESV" by Events or through option card play. To *increase* the ESV, move the Current ESV marker one box to the *right* for each level of increase. To *decrease* the ESV, move the Current ESV marker one box to the *left* for each level of decrease. ESV increases or decreases may also be indicated by + or - symbols, respectively.

Germany Surrenders: After the V-E Day marker has been removed from the track and the Current ESV marker has been flipped to its Germany Surrenders side, ignore all further instructions to increase or decrease ESV.

Look-Up Rules

14. Markers



△14.1 Aid to China

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, the Allied faction receiving it may place it in either the Soviet Conditional Events Box or the Western Conditional Events Box.

The Western faction may remove its Aid to China marker from a Conditional Events Box when applying the Aid to Nationalist China Conditional Event (16.3.9). The faction can remove it from the game completely or put it in the Delay Box.

The Soviet faction may remove its Aid to China marker from a Conditional Events Box when applying the Aid to Communist China Conditional Event (16.5.6). The faction can remove it from the game completely or put it in the Delay Box.

This marker can also be removed from the game by play of Axis card 31a *British Neutrality Pact* or 31b *Russian Neutrality Pact*, Western card 26b *British Neutrality Pact*, or Soviet card 19b *Russian Neutrality Pact*.

Effect: If an Aid to China marker is in an Allied Conditional Events Box, that faction may roll on the Aid to China Table in its Conditional Events Segment, once for each marker.



14.2 Airdrop

When a <u>Blitz-enabled</u> airborne unit performs an Airdrop (4.1.1), flip the counter over and place the Airdrop marker on the map.

Effects: While this marker is on the map:

- During the Blitz Combat Segment only, the attacker receives a one-column shift to the right for each Airdrop marker in the defending hex.
- Enemy units cannot retreat *into* a hex containing an Airdrop marker.
- Enemy units cannot trace a supply line *into* a hex containing an Airdrop marker.

Removal: This marker is removed per 4.1.4 in the Airdrop Landing Segment.



14.3 Allied Collapse

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Strategic Warfare Box.

Effect: This marker counts against the Allied factions when determining the Current Strategic Value (0.1.1).



\triangle 14.4 Bases Damaged

Place this marker in the Strategic Warfare Box when it is received.

Effect: If this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, there is a +1 Delay DRM for all *support units* belonging to the faction indicated on the marker.



14.5 Beachhead

Place this marker per 2.2.3.4. For Axis SNLF Beachhead-0 markers, also see 4.1.3.1, 15.29 and 15.37.

Effects: While this marker is on the map:

- A faction may be required to place a Blitz marker in the same hex (2.2.4). *Exception:* Axis SNLF Beachhead-0 markers.
- A ground unit may cross an All-Sea hexsides to enter a hex containing a Beachhead marker.
- A ground unit can only cross the marker's Beachhead Hexside to *exit* a hex containing a Beachhead marker.
- A hex with a Beachhead marker may be an Open Port.

Clarification: Note that a hex with a Beachhead marker cannot be an Air Base or Naval Base.

- An airborne ground unit stacked on a Beachhead marker cannot conduct an Airdrop, as it must be in a Land hex to do so (4.1.1).
- An HQ unit stacked on a Beachhead marker *cannot* provide Ranged Support (4.2.1.2).
- There is a column shift to the left for attacks across a Beachhead Hexside as specified on the Beachhead counter.
- A supply line may be traced across an All-Sea hexside into a hex containing a Beachhead marker.

Clarification: You can trace across any All-Sea hexside, not just the Beachhead Hexside.



14.6 Blitz

The phasing faction places this marker per 2.2.4. If the Axis faction is the phasing faction, it may be required to roll on the Cabinet Crisis Table as it places the marker. The marker is removed in the affected faction's Marker Segment (4.3).

Effects:

- All friendly units within two hexes of the Blitz marker are <u>Blitz-</u>enabled, including those in the placement hex.
- A defending force cannot use Voluntary Retreat Conversion (4.2.5.3) in a City hex containing a Blitz marker.



14.7 Ceded Land

Place this marker in the Ceded Lands Box or a faction's Force Pool as directed by the scenario setup, event, or option card.

Effects:

• If a Ceded Land marker is in the Ceded Land Box, that Country, Dependent, or Region is either part of the Country stated on the marker (if the marker reads "Ceded to") or is a Dependent of the Country stated on the marker (if the marker reads "Dependent").

Clarification: Note that some Countries, such as Mongolia, may disappear when ceded to another Country.

If a Ceded Land marker is in a faction's Force Pool, that faction
may be eligible to be place the marker in the Ceded Lands Box
during a Conditional Events Segment.



△14.8 Chemical Weapons

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Axis Force Pool.

Effect: If this marker is in the Axis Force Pool, the Axis faction may use it for any *one* combat that Turn. The Axis faction declares whether the Chemical Weapons marker will be used before the die is rolled.

Clarification: The Axis may use this marker during an Allied combat segment.

When the Chemical Weapons marker is used, the Attrition losses suffered by both the attacker and the defender are increased by one. After the Axis faction uses the Chemical Weapons marker, place it on the Turn Track to arrive next Turn.

Example: If the combat result was Dr1 1/2, using this marker would make it a Dr1 2/3 result.



14.9 Convoy

Place this marker per 2.2.3.6.

Effects

- If this marker is on its Troop Convoy side, it can transport *one* unit up to its Transport Capacity using the Port-to-Port Movement Procedure (3.1.2).
- If this marker is on its Supply Convoy side, it allows the owning faction to trace a supply line across that Naval Zone (10.2).



△14.10 Convoy Strategy

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Strategic Warfare Box.

Effect: If this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, the Axis faction may perform one *Delay Reduction* (15.13) at the end of its Delay Segment each turn.



14.11 Devastation

This marker is placed via successful Devastation Marker Placement (2.2.3.5) or the *Project Success: A-bomb* Political Event (15.33). Once placed, Devastation markers are never removed.

Effect: An Axis Strategic Hex inside Japan with an Allied Devastation marker is <u>controlled</u> by the Allied faction that placed the marker. An Allied Strategic Hex inside a Chinese Country or Russia with an Axis Devastation marker is <u>controlled</u> by the Axis faction.

Clarification: You don't get any credit for bombing your own cities, even if they're in enemy hands.



\triangle 14.12 Enforced Peace

When a Forced Settlement, Japanese Concessions or Allied Surrender Conditional Event is performed, place this marker one year ahead on the Turn Track. When it comes off the Turn Track, remove it from the game.

Effect: If this marker is on the Turn Track, the Axis faction cannot "voluntarily" end that Country's Surrender Policy (13.6.1.2).



△14.13 Entry [British, Chinese, Russian, US]

When any Entry marker is removed from the Turn Track, end *any* Policy or Truce that applies to that Country. If that country has *Far Eastern Forces* units in its Conditional Event Box, place those units in the Delay Box.

14.14 European War Markers



*14.14.1 Current ESV

Place this marker on the Current ESV Track as instructed.

Effect: If an Axis Strategic Hex *inside Japan* is under Allied <u>control</u> during Victory Point Checks (0.1.1), add the number of the Box occupied by the Current ESV marker on the Current ESV Track to the Current Strategic Value. *Exception:* The number added cannot be a *negative* number – add 0 instead.

The Current ESV marker may not be moved below the -5 box. If it is placed in the 5 box, the Axis faction wins an Automatic Victory.



*14.14.2 European Limited War

When the European Limited War marker is removed from the Turn Track, the Axis faction rolls one die on the table below. The *only* DRM that applies to this roll is -1 in 1939 and -2 in 1940:

- 1. Limited War Begins
- 2. Peace Continues
- 3. Peace Continues
- 4. Peace Continues
- 5. Peace Continues
- 6. Peace Continues

Design Note: This table is printed on the European War Display as a handy reference.

Limited War Begins: The Axis faction must do all of the following:

- Roll one *unmodified* die. If the result is 1-3, place a European Limited War marker in the Western European War Box on the European War Display. If the result is 4-6, place a European Limited War marker in the Soviet European War Box on the European War Display.
- Place the German Victory marker four <u>Seasonal Turns</u> (i.e., one Year) ahead on the Turn Track.
- Place a European Total War marker in the Summer Seasonal Turn Box two years ahead on the Turn Track.

Example: If European Limited War occurs in Sept-Oct 1939, you'd place the German Victory marker in the Sept-Oct 1940 Turn Track Box, and a European Total War marker in the May-June 1941 Turn Track Box.

Peace Continues: Place the European Limited War marker ahead *two* <u>Seasonal Turns</u> on the Turn Track. *Exception:* European Limited War must happen no later than Autumn 1940. If it is the Autumn 1940 Seasonal Turn, treat this result as Limited War Begins.

Example: You are rolling for the European Limited War marker in the Mar-Apr 1939 Game Turn. You roll a 3, which is modified to a 2 per the Table, so European Limited War does not occur. You place the European Limited War marker back on the Turn Track, in the Aug-Sept 1939 Turn Box.



14.14.3 German Victory [France Defeated, Russia Defeated]

*In DS, the German Victory marker is placed in the Strategic Warfare Box when it is removed from the Turn Track. If Germany is at war with the Western faction, place it with its *France Defeated* side showing. If Germany is at war with the Soviet faction, place it with its *Russia Defeated* side showing.

©In AE, the France Defeated marker is placed in the Strategic Warfare Box when the Case Yellow Conditional Event is applied to France in TK. The Russia Defeated marker is placed in the Strategic Warfare Box when the Ostland Accord Conditional Event is applied to Russia in TK.

If the France Defeated Marker is placed in the Strategic Warfare **Box:** Remove *all* non-F French units from the game (i.e., the French Surface Fleet, 0-1-2 Res infantry and 1-2-2 Col infantry).

Clarification: If France is an active Minor Country in DS, it remains that way; placement of the France Defeated marker has no effect on France's status or alignment.



*14.14.4 European Total War

When the European Total War marker is removed from the Turn Track, the Axis faction *must* roll one unmodified die on this table:

- 1. Total War Begins
- 2. Total War Begins
- 3. Total War Begins
- 4. Limited War Continues
- 5. Limited War Continues
- 6. Limited War Continues

Design Note: Again, this table is printed on the European War Display as a handy reference.

Limited War Continues: Place the European Total War marker ahead *four* <u>Seasonal Turns</u> on the Turn Track. *Exception:* European Total War must happen no later than Summer 1943. If it is the Summer 1943 <u>Seasonal Turn</u>, treat this result as Total War Begins.

Total War Begins: The Axis faction must do all of the following:

- Remove the European Limited War marker from play.
- Place European Total War markers in *both* European War Boxes on the European War Display.
- Place the US Entry marker three <u>Seasonal Turns</u> ahead on the Turn Track.
- Place the V-E Day marker in the 16 <u>Seasonal Turns</u> (i.e., four Years) ahead on the Turn Track.

Example: European Total War starts in May-June 1941. You would place the US Entry marker in the Mar-Apr 1942 Turn Box and the V-E Day marker in the May-June 1945 Turn Box.



*14.14.5 V-E Day

When the V-E Day marker is removed from the Turn Track, do all of the following.

- Remove all European Total War markers from play.
- Ignore all future instructions to increase or decrease the ESV.
 Flip the ESV marker over to its "Germany Surrenders" side as a reminder of this.



14.15 Failure [Command, Supply]

There are two Failure markers: *Failure (Command)* and *Failure (Supply)*. Each Failure has a set of rules that limit the *faction* affected by them. Such a faction is referred to as a *Failure Affected Faction* (FAF).

Failure Range: Failure rules apply in the hex containing a Failure marker and all hexes within a five-hex range. These hexes are referred to as "Failure Hexes."

Failure Effects: These rules apply while a Failure is in effect.

Support Unit or Airdrop Marker Placement:

- An FAF support unit or Airdrop marker cannot be placed in a Failure Hex
- An FAF unit cannot contest attempted placement of an enemy support unit in a Failure Hex.

Movement:

- If Failure (Supply) is in effect, an FAF ground unit cannot move *into* a Failure Hex containing an EZOC. *No exceptions*.
- If Failure (Command) is in effect, a FAF ground unit cannot move out of a Failure Hex containing an EZOC. No exceptions.

Combat.

 An FAF ground unit cannot conduct an Airdrop, Beachhead Landing, Advance After Combat, or Exploitation into a Failure Hex.

Removing a Failure Marker: This marker is removed in the affected faction's Marker Segment (4.3) and set aside for possible later use.



14.16 Free Passage

This marker is placed in the capital of a Neutral Minor Country during setup when it is activated by the *Free Passage* Political Event (15.16).

Effect: While this marker is in a Minor Country's capital, its ground units cannot use Operational Movement, Reserve Movement, Retreat, or Exploitation to enter a hex outside that Minor Country or one of its Dependents, nor can it attack such a hex.

Clarification: Free Passage markers can be removed by Influence or Neutrals Pressured events.



△14.17 Fujiyama Bomber Production

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Strategic Warfare Box.

Effect: If this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, it provides a +1 Delay DRM to all *Soviet* units and markers *and* to all *Nationalist Chinese* units and markers. *Exception:* This DRM does not apply to units or markers belonging to a Policy Affected Country or Truce Affected Country.



△14.18 Hakko Ichiu

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it on the VP Track in the VP Box containing the Rising Sun VP marker. If the VP marker reads *Allied Crusade*, place it in the 0 VP Box.

Effects:

- When this marker is placed on the VP Track, remove the Axis Minor Country Production +1 marker from the game.
- The Axis faction receives additional Japanese replacements (1.3.2.6).



△14.19 I-boat Strategy

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Strategic Warfare Box.

Effect: If this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, it provides a +1 Delay DRM to all *non-Chinese* units and markers belonging to the *Western* faction, except those belonging to a Policy Affected Country or Truce Affected Country.



14.20 Influence [Axis, Soviet, Western]

Place or remove the respective marker as instructed in a Neutral Country's Capital. There can be no more than *one* Influence or Neutrality marker in a Neutral Country at any time.

Effects: If a country with an Influence marker is selected in the Political Events Segment for an event requiring a die roll, apply the indicated +1 or -1 DRM to all related rolls (in *addition* to any other Political DRMs).

An Influence marker in a Minor Country might cause or prevent its activation with the *Country Joins [Faction]* (15.9), *Free Passage* (15.16), or *Influence* (15.19) Political Events.



14.21 Intensive Bombing

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Strategic Warfare Box.

△**Effect:** If this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, it provides a +1 Delay DRM to the Axis faction *unless* one of the following conditions is true:

- There is a Policy or Truce marker in the US Posture Boxes.
- There is no US <u>Air Base</u> within nine hexes of a Japanese Home Country City.
- The Reduced US Impact marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box.



△14.22 Japanese Government

Design Note: The political leadership that took Japan to war was quite fractured. The main rivalry was between the Army and Navy, but within each branch of service there were numerous cliques and plots.

In DS, this internal turmoil is handled through the manipulation of the Japanese Government marker.

The Government marker has two sides: *Army* and *Navy*. When the Government marker is in its Holding Box (on the Axis Force Pool Display), the side that is face up is said to be "leading the Government."

When the marker is in the Delay Box or the Turn Track, *no* branch is "leading the Government." When the Japanese Government marker returns from the Turn Track, the Axis faction must determine which branch will be leading the government.

If there is a Military Takeover marker in the Strategic Warfare Box: The Axis faction may select which branch will lead the government.

Otherwise: Players can flip the marker like a coin or roll one unmodified die.

- On a 1-3, place the Government marker in its Holding Box on its Army side.
- On a 4-6, place the Government marker in its Holding Box on its *Navy* side.

Effects: Many Axis Option Cards have Selection Requirements that depend on whether or not a particular branch is leading the government.

The Axis faction must roll on the Cabinet Crisis Table if it wishes to place a Blitz marker in a hex during the Support Segment and the appropriate branch is not leading the government (2.2.4).

The Axis faction may place the Government marker in the Delay Box to "voluntarily" end a Policy (13.6.12), as specified below. The PAC that may be affected depends on which branch is leading the government.

Army:

- At any time: "voluntarily" end the Neutrality Policy with Russia.
- At any time, provided the Enforced Peace marker is not on the Turn Track: "voluntarily" end the Surrender Policy with Communist China, Nationalist China, or Russia.

Navy:

- At any time: "voluntarily" end the Neutrality Policy with Britain.
- At any time, provided the Enforced Peace marker is not on the Turn Track: "voluntarily" end the Surrender Policy with Britain or the US.

The Japanese Government marker may also be placed in the Delay Box to avoid certain negative Political Events.



△14.23 Japanese Mandate

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it on the VP Track in the VP Box containing the Rising Sun VP marker. If the VP marker reads *Allied Crusade*, place it in the 0 VP Box.

Effect:

- The Rising Sun VP marker cannot move to the right of the Japanese Mandate marker (0.1.2).
- The Allies must place the Allied Crusade marker in a highernumbered VP Box to win the game (0.3).
- The Axis faction receives additional Japanese replacements (1.3.2.4).
- The Axis faction may perform Japanese Perimeter fortress conversion (2.3.2.1).



14.24 Jet Fighter Production

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Strategic Warfare Box.

Effect: If this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, it provides a +1 Delay DRM to all Allied *air* units, *except* those belonging to a Policy Affected Country or Truce Affected Country.



△14.25 Kamikazes

Place this marker in the Strategic Warfare Box when it is received.

Effect: If this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, it provides a -1 Delay DRM for *support units* belonging to the Axis faction. In addition, the Axis faction cannot use a Japanese Air Force, Surface Fleet, CV Fleet, or CV Strike unit for any purpose other than to contest the placement of another support unit (2.2.3.2).



14.26 Lend-Lease

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, the Western faction may place it in either the Soviet Conditional Events Box or the Western Conditional Events Box.

△The Western player may remove this marker from a Conditional Events Box when applying the Lend-Lease to Britain Conditional Event (16.3.10). He can remove it from the game completely or put it in the Delay Box.

Effect: If this marker is in an Allied Conditional Events Box, that faction may be able to roll on the Lend-Lease Table in its Conditional Events Segment.



14.27 LOC Damaged

Place the named marker in the Strategic Warfare Box.

Effect: While this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, *European Commitment* (15.14) cannot be applied to support units belonging to that Major Country. For this purpose *only*, French support units are treated as British.

Clarification: That means you can't bring the French fleet to the Pacific if the Suez Canal is damaged.

Removal: Western LOC Damaged markers are removed by play of cards 39a *Symbol Conference* or 39b *Trident Conference*. The Russian LOC Damaged marker is removed by play of card 8 *War Progress 3*.



14.28 Logistics

△Axis (IGHQ, Kwantung): When an Axis Logistics marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Axis Force Pool. See 1.2.1 for its map placement and removal.

Effect: If in a hex and able to trace a supply line to a supply source in Japan, it is a Replacement Location for Japanese units.

Soviet (Far East): When the Soviet Logistics marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Soviet Force Pool. See 1.2.1 for its map placement and removal.

Effect: If in a hex and able to trace an *overland* supply line to a supply source in Russia, it is as a Replacement Location for Russian units.

△Western (POA, SWPA): When a Western Logistics marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Western Force Pool. See 1.2.1 for its map placement and removal.

Effect: If in a hex and able to trace a supply line to the Western US Box, it is a Replacement Location for US units.



14.29 Materiel Shortages

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Strategic Warfare Box.

Effect: If this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, it provides a +1 Delay DRM to the Axis faction.



14.30 Military Takeover

Place this marker in the Strategic Warfare Box per 15.24.

Effects:

- This marker counts against the Axis faction when determining the Current Strategic Value (0.1.1).
- \(\Delta\) This marker allows the Axis faction to select which branch will lead the Japanese government when the Government marker returns from the Turn Track (14.2.2).



14.31 Minor Country Production [+1, +2]

Each faction has one of these markers. Place this marker in the Strategic Warfare Box when it is removed from the Turn Track.

Effect: A faction with a Minor Country Production +1 marker in the Strategic Warfare Box receives one Minor Country seasonal replacement step. A faction with a Minor Country Production +2 marker in the Strategic Warfare Box receives two Minor Country seasonal replacement steps (1.3.2.2).



14.32 Mobilizing

This marker is placed in the capital of a Neutral Minor Country when it is set up (13.7). This marker is removed in the affected faction's Marker Segment (4.3) and set aside for possible later use.

Effect: While this marker is in a Minor Country's capital, its ground units may not use Operational Movement to enter a hex outside that Minor Country or one of its Dependents, nor may it attack such a hex.



14.33 Neutrality

Place or remove the marker as instructed in a Neutral Country's capital. There can be no more than *one* Influence or Neutrality marker in a Neutral Country at any time.

Effects: If a country with a Neutrality marker is selected in the Political Events Segment for an event requiring a die roll, apply the indicated -1 DRM (if the Axis faction is rolling) or +1 DRM (if an Allied faction is rolling) to all related rolls, in *addition* to any other Political DRMs.

A Neutrality marker in a Minor Country might cause or prevent its activation with the *Country Joins [Faction]* (15.9), *Free Passage* (15.16), or *Influence* (15.19) events.



14.34 No Occupation

Place this marker in the capital of an Axis Minor Country when it is:

- activated by an Allied declaration of war (6.1.1) and the Axis faction chooses to place this marker.
- subjected to the *Operation Avalanche* Conditional Event (16.4.2).

Effects: While this marker is in a Minor Country's capital:

- Its ground units cannot use Operational Movement, Reserve Movement, Retreat, or Exploitation to enter a hex outside that Minor Country or one of its Dependents, nor can it attack such a hex.
- The Minor Country is no longer subject to Axis Minor Country Occupation (16.1.2).



△14.35 Oil Embargo

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Strategic Warfare Box.

△Effect: If this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, it provides a +1 Delay DRM to Axis *support units, unless* a *supplied* Axis ground unit, Detachment marker, or Logistics marker occupies an Oil hex on the map (see Terrain Key).



14.36 Partisan Base

Place this marker in the Force Pool of the Allied faction receiving it. See 1.2.2 for its placement and removal.

Effect: If this marker is in a hex that does *not* contain an enemy ground or support unit, the hex is as a Replacement Location and supply source for the units belonging to the Minor Country it is located in.



14.37 Policy

ΔPolicy markers include *Acceptance, Border Disputes* ("Disputes" for short), *Lapsed Treaty* ("Treaty" for short), *Neutrality Pact* ("Neutrality" for short), *Quarantine, Resistance, Surrender*, and *Uneasy Peace* ("Peace" for short).

Place or remove from the respective Posture Box as instructed.

Effect: See Policies 13.6.1



△14.38 Quit India

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Strategic Warfare Box.

Effect: While this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, the Western faction cannot take British *Ind* colonial steps as replacements (1.3.3). Also, Western ground units *in* Ceylon or India cannot enter hexes *outside* Ceylon or India during the Western Operational or Reserve Movement Phases.

Removal: This marker is immediately removed from the game if a Japanese ground unit occupies or enters a hex in Ceylon or India. It is also removed from the game by play of Western cards 9a *Indian Independence* and 9b *Gandhi Arrested*.

Design Note: When war broke out in Europe, the Indian National Congress was divided between those who wanted to support the Allies in exchange for major political concessions, and the Gandhi-inspired majority who moved toward civil disobedience and refused to cut a deal with Britain. This came to a head when Japan declared war and India was directly threatened, leading the Congress toward outright rebellion by voting in favor of the "Quit India" resolution to keep India from supporting the war effort.



*14.39 Reserves [Limited War, Total

War]

A Reserves marker is placed in the Delay Box when the *European Reserves* Event is applied (16.3.6, 16.5.4). When the marker is removed from the Turn Track, the support units associated with that marker are placed in the European Holding Box.

Each Allied faction's Total War Reserves marker is on the back of its Limited War Reserves marker. If a faction's Limited War Reserves marker is on the Turn Track when placement of its Total War Reserves marker is called for, place the marker in the Delay Box and immediately move its associated Limited War support units to the European Holding Box.



△14.40 Showa Restoration

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Strategic Warfare Box.

Effects:

- If this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, the Axis faction may place it in the Delay Box during the Organization Segment and combine *one* Japanese colonial unit with a Japanese non-colonial unit (2.3.1.2).
- If this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, the Axis faction may place it in the Delay Box at any time and flip over the Government marker in its Holding Box to immediately change who is leading the government.
- While this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, an Axis Minor Country is not occupied (16.1.2) unless there are two or more Japanese multi-step units or any ground unit belonging to a different Axis Country.



△14.41 Suicidal Raiders

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Axis Force Pool.

Effect: In an Axis Support Segment, the Axis faction may take this marker from the Axis Force Pool and place it in the Naval Warfare Delay Box.

If the Axis faction does this, the Western faction must immediately take *two* friendly support units from the Western Force Pool to "match" the placement. Air units (*including CV Strike units*) that are selected to match are placed in the Delay Box. Fleet units that are selected to match are placed in the Naval Warfare Delay Box.

Clarification: If the Western faction has only one support unit in its Force Pool, just place that unit in its Delay Box. There is no additional penalty.



14.42 Totsugeki

The phasing faction places this marker per 15.29 or 15.37. The marker is removed in the affected faction's Marker Segment (4.3).

Effects:

- All friendly units within two hexes of the Totsugeki marker are <u>Blitz-enabled</u>, including those in the placement hex.
- A defending force cannot use Voluntary Retreat Conversion (4.2.5.3) in a City hex containing a Totsugeki marker.



14.43 Truce

Truce markers include Armistice, Negotiation, and Reassess Policy.

Place or remove from the respective Posture Box as instructed.

Effect: See Truces (13.6.2)

Clarification: Reassess Policy and Armistice Truce markers have red borders to remind you they can only be reduced on <u>Seasonal Turns</u>.

14.44 US Markers



14.44.1 Increase USCL

When Total War begins, place this marker *three* <u>Seasonal Turns</u> ahead on the Turn Track.

Effect: Each time this marker is removed from the Turn Track, advance the USCL marker one box on the USCL Track, then place the Increase USCL marker *four* <u>Seasonal Turns</u> (i.e., one Year) ahead on the Turn Track. The USCL marker stops advancing once it reaches the USCL 4 Box.

Example: It is Aug-Sept 1942 and the Increase USCL marker comes off the Turn Track. The Pacific USCL marker, which is in the USCL 1 Box on the USCL Track, is placed in the USCL 2 Box, and the Increase USCL marker is placed in the Aug-Sept 1943 Turn Box.



14.44.2 Pacific USCL

Place this marker on the USCL Track per the scenario setup.

Effect: The USCL applies a Political DRM and DRMs to Axis and Western Delay rolls, as indicated by the USCL Track.



14.44.3 Reduced US Impact

If the Western *Reduced US Impact* Conditional Event (16.3.7) is in effect, place this marker in the Strategic Warfare Box.

Effects:

- If this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, the Axis faction does not suffer a +1 Delay DRM if the Intensive Bombing marker (14.21) is in the Strategic Warfare Box.
- If this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box and the USCL is 1 or more, the Axis faction receives a -1 Delay DRM.



14.44.4 US Entry

When European Total War goes into effect, place this marker *three* Seasonal Turns ahead on the Turn Track.

Effect: When removed from the Turn Track:

- End any Policy or Truce that applies to the US.
- \triangle If there are US Far Eastern Forces units in the Western Conditional Events Box, place those units in the Delay Box.



14.44.5 US Victory Program

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Strategic Warfare Box.

Effects: While this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box:

- The Western faction receives additional US replacements (1.3.2.4).
- There is a +1 Delay DRM for all Western units.
- There is a +1 DRM on the Lend-Lease and Aid Tables.



△14.45 V-J Day

Place the V-J Day marker four Years ahead on the Turn Track from the Turn that Total War goes into effect.

Effect: When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, the game ends. Conduct a Final Victory Point Check (0.3). © *Exception:* In *AE*, the game does not end until *both* the V-E and V-J Day markers are removed (0.4). Also see "Unconditional Surrender" below.

©Unconditional Surrender: At the moment the V-J Day marker is removed from the Turn Track, the Axis faction *may* return the marker to the Turn Track if all of the following conditions are true:

- The Axis Japanese Mandate or Hakko Ichiu marker is on the VP Track.
- The Axis faction <u>controls</u> at least one Axis Strategic Hex inside Japan.
- The V-E Day marker is still on the TK Turn Track.

Clarification: If you've removed both the V-E Day and V-J Day markers from their respective Turn Tracks during the same turn, you cannot place either one back on the Turn Track. Your AE game is now officially over.

Until the V-E Day marker gets picked up though, you can keep replacing the V-J Day marker each turn as long as you meet the conditions above.

If the Axis faction chooses to place the V-J Day marker back on the Turn Track, the marker is placed in the very next Turn Box (i.e., so it will get picked up at the beginning of the next turn). The Axis faction *also* scores 1 *Bonus VP* for extending the *DS* game (0.4).

Clarification: You can record Bonus VPs earned by placing a +1 (or +2, +3 or +4, as appropriate) marker on the VP Track, next to the Japanese Mandate or Hakko Ichiu marker.

Design Note: The Bonus VPs are there to make the Allies stick to their "unconditional surrender" war aims. Bear in mind that the Allies cannot earn more than 4 VPs on a map, so if you can keep Japan in the war long enough, the Allies won't be able to claim victory.



14.46 War Production

When this marker is removed from the Turn Track, place it in the Strategic Warfare Box.

Effect: If this marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, it provides a -1 Delay DRM to the owning faction.



14.47 Weather [Mud, Storms, Snow]

These markers are simply reminders. Players may use them as needed to indicate the current weather in Weather Areas on the map.



14.48 ±1, ±2

These markers are simply reminders. Players may use them to record additional VPs earned by the Axis faction after V-E or V-J Day in the AE combined game. They can also be placed in the Delay Box to record a faction's combined modified DRM.

15. Political Events

15.1 Allies Support Resistance

If the Axis faction received this event: Roll one die. If the *unmodified* result is 3 or less, the Western faction may apply one of the following listed below. If 4 or more, the Soviet faction may apply one of the following.

If an Allied faction received this event: It may do one of the following:

- If Pre-War is not in effect, select a Partisan Base marker and place it in the Allied faction's Force Pool.
- Select one hex on the map containing the following unit or marker:
 - An Axis Detachment or Logistics marker, but not one in an Island hex.
 - ⇒ An Axis colonial unit.
 - ⇒ An Axis Minor Country unit.
 - ⇒ An Axis multi-national unit that has an Axis Minor Country unit in its Holding Box.

The Axis faction must remove a Detachment or Logistics marker, or eliminate *one* colonial or Minor Country step from the selected hex. Where a choice exists, a step must be eliminated before removing a marker. A removed Detachment or Logistics marker is placed in the Delay Box. For eliminating steps, see 4.2.6.2.

Example: The Western faction selects a hex containing the two-step Axis AEx HQ and no other units. The Axis faction must eliminate the Minor Country infantry unit located in the Axis AEx HQ Holding Box. This requires the unit to break down, so a one-step Japanese infantry-type unit is placed in the hex. The HQ itself is placed in the Delay Box.

Design Note: This event represents Axis command disputes, logistical failures, and partisan uprisings.

△15.2 Banzai!

The Axis player must do one of the following:

- Immediately conduct one attack that includes a *Japanese* unit. Although this attack takes place in the Political Events Segment, follow the Regular Combat Segment rules to resolve it.
- Take *one* Axis support unit from the Axis Force Pool and place it in the Delay Box (if it is an Air unit) or in the Naval Warfare Delay Box (if it is a Fleet unit). The Axis player may then select one support unit *of the same type* from an Allied Force Pool and place it in the same Delay Box. The Allied support unit cannot belong to a Truce Affected Country or Policy Affected Country. If the Axis faction selects a CV Fleet unit, he may flip it to its CV Strike side (and place it in the Delay Box) only if he does *not* pair it with an Allied CV Fleet; if he chooses to place an Allied CV Fleet unit in Delay then both units must go to the Naval Warfare Delay Box.

Example: The Axis player receives this result and chooses one of his CV Fleets. He may pick an Allied CV Fleet and place both units in the Naval Warfare Delay Box. He cannot select a different Allied support unit, such as a Surface Fleet unit. If he chooses to not pick an Allied CV Fleet, he may flip the CV Fleet unit to its CV Strike side and place the unit in the Delay Box.

\triangle 15.3 Bases Damaged

If card 28a East Wind Rain is the Axis Current Card, place the Western Bases Damaged marker (14.4) in the Strategic Warfare Box.

If card 28b North Wind Cloudy is the Axis Current Card, place the Soviet Bases Damaged marker in the Strategic Warfare Box.

△15.4 Border Incident

If Russia has a Posture of Neutrality, or Communist China, Nationalist China, and Russia all have a Posture of War: Treat this event as No Result.

Otherwise: The Axis faction must do *one* of the following:

- End *one* Policy in the Russian, Communist Chinese, or Nationalist Chinese Posture Boxes.
- Eliminate *one* Japanese Kwantung step anywhere on the map.
- Remove the *Army* Government marker from its Holding Box and place it in the Delay Box.

Clarification: You can select this last option only if the Army is leading the government. It represents the Army "losing face" over a border dispute after the Japanese government successfully prevents the matter from escalating to war.

15.5 Border War

If the Axis faction received this event: Activate the Country as an *Axis* Country. Then the Axis player must select a Neutral Country that shares a Border with the Axis Country *or* one of its Dependents, and activate that Country as an *Allied* Country per 13.5. (If there are no such Neutral Countries available, no Country is activated as an Allied Country.)

If an Allied faction received this event: Activate the Country as an *Allied* Country. Then the Allied player must select a Neutral Country that shares a Border with the Allied Country *or* one of its Dependents, and activate that Country as an *Axis* Country. (If there are no such Neutral Countries available, no Country is activated as an Axis Country.)

△15.6 Cabinet Shuffle

If the Government marker is in its Holding Box, the Axis faction must flip the marker over.

Example: If the marker is on its Navy side, flip it to the Army side.

15.7 Ceded Land

The faction that received this event must take its Ceded Land marker corresponding to the land being demanded and place it in the Ceded Lands Box. That faction may also take *one* Detachment marker from its Force Pool and place it in a Port and/or City hex in the Ceded Land.

If the Axis faction placed the Ceded Land marker and the Country ceding the land...

- contains a Neutrality or Axis Influence marker, remove that marker.
- does not contain a Neutrality or Influence marker and does not share a Border with a Soviet country, place a Western Influence marker in the Country.
- does not contain a Neutrality or Influence marker but does share a Border with a Soviet country, roll an unmodified die. If the result is 3 or less, place a Western Influence marker in the Country. If 4 or more, place a Soviet Influence marker in it.

If an Allied faction placed the Ceded Land marker and the Country ceding the land:

- contains a Neutrality or Allied Influence marker, remove that marker
- *does* not *contain a Neutrality or Influence marker*, place an Axis Influence marker in the Country.

Clarification: Obviously, you don't place any Influence marker anywhere if the Country no longer exists after being ceded.

Example: The Axis Current Card is card 8 Demand Inner Mongolia, and Hopeh is neutral. The Axis faction gets a Ceded Land result. It places the Japanese Inner Mongolia Dependent marker in the Ceded Lands Box, then it must place an Allied marker in Hopeh. Because Hopeh shares a Border with Kansu (a Soviet Minor Country), the Axis faction must roll the die to determine which Influence marker to place. The roll is a 5, so the Axis puts a Soviet marker in Peiping. If Hopeh was not a Neutral Country, or if it already had a Soviet or Western marker, the Axis faction would not place an Influence marker.

△15.8 Chinese Incident

If an Allied faction received this event: It may do *one* of the following:

- *Chinese Politics*: Change this event to Minor Country Politics (15.26); the Area Table selected *must* be the Area Table: China.
- Encourage Resistance: Change the Allied faction's Chinese Posture to Resistance, but only if it is Acceptance or Surrender.
- Guerrilla Warfare: Select one hex in a Chinese Country or Japanese Dependent that contains the following unit or marker:
 - ⇒ An Axis Detachment or Logistics marker, but not one in an Island hex.
 - ⇒ An Axis colonial unit.
 - ⇒ An Axis Minor Country unit.
 - ⇒ An Axis multi-national unit that has an Axis Minor Country unit in its Holding Box.

The Axis faction must remove a Detachment or Logistics marker or eliminate *one* colonial or Minor Country step from the selected hex. Where a choice exists, a step must be eliminated before removing a marker. A removed Detachment or Logistics marker is placed in the Delay Box. For eliminating steps, see 4.2.6.2.

- Influence: Select a Chinese Country and apply Influence (15.19) to it
- Negotiate: Increase or reduce an existing Truce marker in the Allied faction's Chinese Posture Box by one level (13.6.2.3).
- Truce: Place a Truce marker of the Allied Faction's choice in its Chinese Posture Box, but only if the Allied faction's Chinese Posture is War. If this selection is chosen, the Axis faction may immediately cancel the Truce by removing the Japanese Government marker from its Holding Box and placing it in the Delay Box.

If the Axis faction received this event: It may do *one* of the following:

- Chinese Politics: Change this event to Minor Country Politics (15.26); the Area Table selected must be the Area Table: China.
- Chinese Strife: The Axis faction may roll one die:
 - On an unmodified 1-3, the Western faction must eliminate one Nationalist Chinese Minor Country step anywhere on the map or in a holding box.
 - On an unmodified 4-6, the Soviet faction must eliminate one Communist Chinese Minor Country step anywhere on the map or in a holding box.

The selected step may belong to a multi-step unit. If it does, see 4.2.6.2. If the step is in a Holding Box, the associated multinational unit must perform an Emergency Breakdown (2.3.4).

- *Encourage Acceptance:* Change *one* Chinese Posture to Acceptance, but only if it is Resistance.
- *Negotiate:* Increase or reduce an existing Truce marker in *one* Chinese Posture Box by one level (13.6.2.3).
- Truce: Place a Truce marker of the Axis faction's choice in one Chinese Posture Box with a Posture of War.

15.9 Country Joins [Faction]

If the Minor Country does *not* contain a Neutrality marker or enemy Influence marker: Activate it as a Country friendly to the faction named in the event.

If the Minor Country *does* contain a Neutrality or enemy Influence marker: Remove the marker from the Minor Country.

Example: The Axis faction plays card 33a Treaty and selects Hopeh, which contains a Western Influence marker. The result is Country Joins Axis. Because the faction named on the Influence marker (Western) and the event (Axis) are not the same, the Influence marker is removed.

In other words, it takes two "hits" to bring a country with a Neutrality or enemy Influence marker in on your side.

15.10 Country Resists

If the Axis faction received this event, and:

- *Pre-War is in effect:* Determine the Minor Country's alignment (13.5), then determine its Posture (13.6).
 - ⇒ △If the Minor Country's Posture is *Acceptance*, the Axis faction must roll on the Cabinet Crisis Table.
 - ⇒ △If the Minor Country's Posture is not Acceptance, activate
 the Minor Country as an Allied Country and end its Policy.
 Limited War is now in effect (12.2). Also see "Country
 Activated" below.
- Limited War or Total War is in effect: Activate the Minor Country as an Allied Country after determining its alignment (13.5). If the Minor Country is found to be a PAC, end that Policy. Also see "Country Activated" below.

If the Western faction received this event, and:

 Britain is a PAC: The Western faction must eliminate one British armor step or two British infantry steps from any hex(es) on the map.

Clarification: The eliminated steps do not have to come from the same unit, nor the same hex, though they can.

 Britain is not a PAC: The Axis faction must activate the selected country as an Axis Country. Also see "Country Activated" below.

If the Soviet faction received this event, and:

- Russia is a PAC: The Soviet faction must eliminate one Russian armor step or two Russian infantry steps from any hex(es) on the map.
- Russia is not a PAC: The Axis faction must activate the selected country as an Axis Country. Also see "Country Activated" below.

Example: Russia's Posture is Disputes, the Soviet Current Card is card 21 Demand Mongolia and a Country Resists result occurs. The Soviet faction eliminates two infantry steps.

Country Activated: If a Minor Country is activated by this event, see 13.7.1. The faction that received this event takes its Ceded Land marker corresponding to the land being demanded and places it in its Force Pool. *Important:* The faction that received this event may also place one Blitz marker in its Support Segment of the current turn.

15.11 Coup D'etat

If an Allied faction received this event: Activate the country as an *Axis* Country, but do not perform a Mobilization Roll for it (13.7.1).

If the Axis faction received this event: Activate the country as an *Allied* Country (per 13.5), but do not perform a Mobilization Roll for it.

15.12 Declare War

If an Allied faction received this event: Activate the country as an *Axis* Country.

If the Axis faction received this event: Activate the Minor Country as an *Allied* Country after determining its alignment (13.5). If the Minor Country is found to be a PAC, end that Policy.

15.13 Delay Reduction

The faction may select *one* friendly unit on the Turn Track and move it one box to the left, so that it arrives sooner. The selected unit cannot be moved to the current Game Turn.

15.14 European Commitment

The way this event is performed differs depending on whether you are playing DS or AE.

*15.14.1 European Commitment in DS

If the European War Status of the Allied faction performing this event is *No War*: That faction may select one friendly unit from the European Holding Box and place it in the Delay Box.

If the European War Status of the Allied faction performing this event is *Limited War* or *Total War*: Perform each of these steps in order:

Step 1: Roll one unmodified die. If the result is less than or equal to the current ESV, increase the ESV by one.

Clarification: If the ESV is 0 or less, it cannot increase as a result of this roll. Think of an increase in the ESV as the "interest" you have to pay for borrowing forces from Europe.

Step 2: Roll another *unmodified* die. If the final result is 3 or *less*, the Allied faction performing this event *must* do one of the following:

- Select a Major Country support unit in its Force Pool and place it in the European Holding Box (but see *LOC Damaged* below).
- Increase the ESV by one.
- Treat this event as No Result. An Allied faction can select this option only if:
 - a European Limited War marker is in its European War Box and there is at least *one friendly* support unit in the European Holding Box, or
 - ⇒ a European Total War marker is in its European War Box and there are at least *five Allied* support units in the European Holding Box.

Clarification: In other words, you can count support units belonging to the other Allied faction during Total War, but not during Limited War.

If the final result is 4 or *greater*, the Allied faction performing this event *may* do one of the following:

- Select one friendly unit from the European Holding Box and place it in the Delay Box (but see *LOC Damaged* below).
- Decrease the ESV by one.

Design Note: Events overseas may require that you send units to the Pacific, or allow you to return units from that theater back to Europe.

LOC Damaged: Support units belonging to a Country with an LOC Damaged marker in the Strategic Warfare Box cannot be selected to fulfill European Commitment events.

©15.14.2 European Commitment in AE

The Allied faction performing this event may select *one* support unit in its Force Pool and place it in the Delay Box on the *TK* map.

Exception: Support units belonging to a Country with an LOC Damaged marker in the Strategic Warfare Box cannot be selected.

Example: To Transfer the British Force H CV Fleet from the Pacific to Europe, take it from the DS Force Pool and place it in the Delay Box on the TK map.

15.15 Failure [Command, Supply]

There are two types of Failure Political Events: *Failure (Command)* and *Failure (Supply)*. Each Failure has a marker and set of rules that limit the *faction* affected by them (14.15).

If an *Allied* faction suffers a Failure: The Axis faction places the appropriate Allied Failure marker in any hex on the map. After placing the marker, the Axis faction may take *one* support unit belonging to the Allied faction suffering the Failure and put it in the Delay Box. This unit can come from the Allied faction's Force Pool, a hex on the map, or the Turn Track.

If the *Axis* faction suffers a Failure: The Axis faction must select one of the Allied factions. That faction places the appropriate Axis Failure marker in any hex on the map. After placing the marker, that Allied faction may take one Axis support unit and put it in the Delay Box.

15.16 Free Passage

If the Minor Country does *not* contain a Neutrality or enemy Influence marker: Activate it as a friendly Minor Country (13.7), but place a Free Passage marker (14.16) instead of a Mobilizing marker in the country and do not perform a Mobilization Roll.

If the Minor Country *does* contain a Neutrality or enemy Influence marker: Remove the Neutrality or enemy Influence marker.

△15.17 Gekokujo

If Pre-War is in effect: The Axis faction must do *both* of the following:

- If the Japanese Government marker is in its Holding Box, remove it and place it in the Delay Box.
- End *one* Policy by removing the Policy marker(s) from *any* Posture Box(es). Limited War is now in effect.

If Limited War or Total War is in effect: The Axis faction must turn this event into a Failure Political Event (15.15). If the *Army* leads the Japanese Government, the event is a *Command* Failure. If the *Navy* leads the Government, the event is a *Supply* Failure. If *no* faction leads the Government, the *Western* faction selects which Failure to apply. Resolve the new event immediately.

Design Note: "Gekokujo" is the Japanese term for a traditional form of legitimized insubordination intended to redress perceived social injustices. Before World War II, this insubordination included coups and assassination attempts. In particular, the Japanese Army would start wars on the whims of local commanders. The politicians at home would be left to catch up with events.

△15.18 Home Defense

The Axis faction may immediately receive one Japanese 0-2-1 *HD* infantry unit and place it as a replacement.

15.19 Influence

The faction that received this event may do one of the following:

- Remove a Free Passage or No Occupation marker from the selected Friendly Minor Country.
- Remove a Neutrality or enemy Influence marker from the selected Neutral Minor Country.
- Place a friendly Influence marker in the selected Neutral Minor Country. This option cannot be chosen if there is a Neutrality or enemy Influence marker in the country.
- Activate the selected Neutral Minor Country as a friendly Minor Country. To choose this option, there must be a friendly Influence marker in the Country. Exceptions: If Pre-War is in effect, a Minor Country with a Posture of Acceptance, Peace, or Quarantine cannot be activated as an Allied Minor Country.

Clarification: The Acceptance, Peace, or Quarantine Postures would not prevent a minor country from activating as an Axis minor country.

Example: Limited War is in effect, Mongolia has a Soviet Influence marker in it and the Soviet faction received an Influence result. It can activate Mongolia as a Soviet Country. If the Axis or Western faction received the Influence event, it could either remove the Soviet marker or treat it as a No Result and do nothing.

△15.20 International Incident

If Britain has a Posture of Neutrality, or Britain, Nationalist China, and the US all have a Posture of War: Treat this event as No Result.

Otherwise: The Axis faction must do *one* of the following:

- End one Policy in the British, US, or Nationalist Chinese Posture Boxes
 - Clarification: Remember that ending a Policy means removing all markers of that Policy.
- Allow the Western faction to perform the *Military Aid* Political Event (15.23).
- Remove the Navy Government marker from its Holding Box and place it in the Delay Box.

Clarification: You can select this last option only if the Navy is leading the government. It represents government efforts to prevent events like the Rape of Nanking or the Panay and Ladybird Incidents from escalating to war.

△15.21 Japan Supports Nationalists

Regardless of which faction received this event, the *Axis* faction may do *one* of the following:

- Receive and place one Japanese colonial or Axis Minor Country replacement step.
- Select a hex containing a Port in an *active* Chinese Country that is *not* a PAC. If the hex does *not* contain a non-Chinese Allied ground unit, then place a Japanese Detachment marker in the hex and intern any Chinese units there (16.7).
- Select one hex on the map containing the following unit or marker:
 - An Allied Detachment or Logistics marker, but not one in an Island hex.
 - ⇒ An Allied colonial unit.
 - ⇒ An Allied Minor Country unit.
 - ⇒ An Allied multi-national unit that has an Allied Minor Country unit in its Holding Box.

The Allied faction must remove a Detachment or Logistics marker or eliminate *one* colonial or Minor Country step from the selected hex. Where a choice exists, a step must be eliminated before removing a marker. A removed Detachment or Logistics marker is placed in the Delay Box. For eliminating steps, see 4.2.6.2.

△15.22 LOC Damaged

If card 28a East Wind Rain is the Axis Current Card, the Axis faction may select either *one* of the US or British LOC Damaged markers (14.27) and place it in the Strategic Warfare Box.

If card 28b *North Wind Cloudy* is the Axis Current Card, the Axis faction may select *one* of the following:

- Place the Russian LOC Damaged marker in the Strategic Warfare Box.
- Select *one* Aid to China marker in an Allied Conditional Events Box or on the Turn Track and place it in the Delay Box.

Design Note: Japanese raiders damage an important line of communication during their surprise attack.

15.23 Military Aid

The phasing faction may do one of the following:

- Receive *one* Minor Country step unit and place it as a replacement (1.3.4).
- Receive *one* colonial step unit and place it as a replacement.
- Turn this event into a *Delay Reduction* (15.13) Political Event and resolve it immediately.

15.24 Military Takeover

The Axis faction must do all of the following:

- Place a Military Takeover marker in the Strategic Warfare Box.
- \(\Delta \) If the Japanese Government marker is in its Holding Box, the
 Axis faction must place it in the Delay Box.
- \(\Delta\) If the Showa Restoration marker is in the Strategic Warfare
 Box or on the Turn Track, remove it from the game.
- \(\Delta \) If the Hakko Ichiu marker is on the VP track, replace it with the Japanese Mandate marker.

 \Delta The Axis faction may place a Blitz marker in its Support Segment of the current turn.

15.25 Minor Country Created

If this result is from an Axis *Political Expansion* or *Puppet Government* card: The Axis faction may select *one* conquered Country or *one* eligible Dependent or Region (13.8.2) with all of its Cities and hexes containing Allied Partisan Bases under Axis control. The area selected becomes an active *Axis* Minor Country. For a Dependent or Region, the City identified as a Provisional Capital within its borders becomes its Capital.

Add the Minor Country's units to the Axis Force Pool, removing them from the Allied Conquered Minor Country Holding Box or adding its N units to play as necessary.

Intern any Allied Partisan Base markers in the new Country (16.7).

If there is a Japanese Ceded Land marker with the same name as the new Minor Country in the Ceded Lands Box, remove that marker from the game.

Example: The Indochina Japanese Dependent marker is in the Ceded Lands Box to note Indochina has been ceded to Japan. If Indochina is created as a Minor Country, its Japanese Dependent marker would be removed.

△If a Japanese colonial unit specifically associated with the new Minor Country (Bur or Ind) is on the map, Turn Track or in the Axis Force Pool, remove that unit from the game.

Example: If the Axis creates Burma has a Minor Country, it has to remove the Bur colonial unit.

If this result is from a Western *Independence* card: The selected Dependent becomes a Neutral Minor Country. Intern all units in the newly created Country. The City identified as a Provisional Capital within that Dependent becomes its Capital. Place the new Country's flag marker (on the back of its 0-1-2 Res infantry unit) in that hex as a reminder of the Country's existence.

Set aside the rest of its N units for future play.

If an Axis or Western colonial unit specifically associated with the newly independent Country (Ind or Phil) is on the map, Turn Track or in the Western Force Pool, remove that unit from the game. ©This includes all *Ind* units in *TK* if India is created as a Neutral Minor Country in *DS*.

Example: The Western faction plays card 9a Indian Independence. India becomes a Neutral Minor Country. India's N units are readied in case the Minor Country is activated later in the game. All British and Japanese Ind colonial units are removed from play.

15.26 Minor Country Politics

If Pre-War or Limited War is in effect: The faction that received this event must select an Area Table and roll one die. If the result yields a Minor Country or Dependent, check the following.

If the result is a Neutral Country: The Axis faction may treat this as a No Result *or* select the Neutral Country and roll on the Diplomatic Incident Table.

Design Note: Be careful as this option can burst into flames!

If the result is an Axis Country: The Axis faction must select one Neutral Country that shares a Border with the Axis Country or one of its Dependents, and activate the selected Country as an Allied Country.

Design Note: The Axis Minor Country starts a war in order to fulfill its own aggressive designs.

If the result is an active Soviet Country: The Soviet faction must select one Neutral Country that shares a Border with the Soviet Country or one of its Dependents, and activate the selected Country as an Axis Country.

If the result is an active Western Country: Treat this as No Result. If the result is a Conquered Country or Dependent, the Axis faction must eliminate *one* step from any Axis ground unit within that Country or Dependent.

Design Note: Partisan uprisings occur within the occupied nation.

If Total War is in effect: The faction that received this event must select an Area Table and roll one die. If the result yields a Minor Country or Dependent, check the following.

If the result is an Active Country, the faction responsible for that Minor must eliminate two of the Minor's steps from any unit(s) in any hex(es). The eliminated steps do not have to come from the same unit, nor the same hex.

Design Note: The war-weary Minor Country withdraws troops from the field.

If the result is a Conquered Country or a Dependent, the Axis faction must eliminate *one* step from any Axis ground unit within that Country or Dependent.

 \triangle **NEI** (incl. Dependents): If this event is rolled on the Area Table: SE Asia, then Borneo, Celebes and Dutch New Guinea are considered to be *part of* the Netherlands East Indies when resolving the ensuing event.

Example: During Total War, the NEI is affected by a Minor Country Politics result. The Axis faction could choose to eliminate a step in Dutch New Guinea, as that Dependent is considered part of the NEI for this event.

Clarification: Remember, if you roll a country that doesn't exist anymore, such as Mongolia after it has been ceded to Russia, treat this event as No Result.

Design Note: As you can see, the Minor Country Politics event can cause some nasty surprises, so be sure to leave a few units in your rear areas to guard against such uprisings.

15.27 Neutrality

The faction that received this event must do *one* of the following:

- If the selected Minor Country contains an Influence marker, remove it
- If the selected Minor Country does *not* contain an Influence or Neutrality marker, place a Neutrality marker in that Country.

15.28 Neutrals Pressured

The faction that received this event must do *one* of the following:

- *Minor Country Politics:* Turn this event into a Minor Country Politics Political Event (15.26). Resolve this new event now.
- Neutrality Discussions: Place a friendly Influence marker in one Neutral Country, or remove a Neutrality or enemy Influence marker from one Neutral Country.
- \[
 \textit{DPressure Britain:} \] If Britain is a PAC and the Western Aid to
 China marker is in an Allied Conditional Events Box, place that
 marker in the Delay Box.
- \(\text{DPressure Russia: If Russia is a PAC and the Soviet Aid to China marker is in an Allied Conditional Events Box, place that marker in the Delay Box.

Design Note: These events represent diplomatic closure of the Burma Road and other routes to China.

- Pressure the US: If the US is a PAC and the Lend-Lease marker is in an Allied Conditional Events Box, place that marker in the Delay Box.
- \(\triangle Reassess Policies: \) If the VP marker reads Rising Sun, select a friendly Posture Box and end that Policy (13.6.1.2). Replace the Policy marker(s) with Reassess Policy Truce marker(s).
 Exceptions: The Acceptance, Neutrality, and Quarantine Policies cannot be ended.

Clarification: Remember that Soviet Posture Boxes are not friendly to the Western faction, and Western Posture Boxes are not friendly to the Soviet faction.

• *Wider Involvement:* Select *one* friendly Minor Country with a Free Passage marker in its Capital and remove that marker.

△15.29 Operation Z

The Axis faction *may* select *one* Neutral Country and do *one* of the following:

- Declare War (15.12)
- Roll on the Diplomatic Incident Table

In addition, the Axis faction may perform a certain number of Z *Actions*. The number of Z Actions allowed depends on the current Season:

- During any Autumn, Winter, or Spring turn, the Axis faction may perform up to six Z Actions.
- During any Summer turn, the Axis faction may perform up to four Z Actions.

To perform a Z Action, the Axis faction selects *one* of the following:

- Harbor Attack: Select one enemy Surface Fleet support unit from an Allied Force Pool or the Turn Track and place that unit in the Naval Warfare Delay Box. The Surface Fleet cannot belong to a Truce Affected Country or Policy Affected Country.
- *Heroic Effort by the Army:* Take one Air support unit or HQ unit from the map, Delay Box, or Turn Track and immediately return it to your Force Pool. This option can only be selected if the Axis has played card 28b *North Wind Cloudy*.
- Heroic Effort by the Navy: Take one Fleet support unit or Scratch Convoy marker from the map, Delay Box, or Turn Track and immediately return it to your Force Pool. This option can only be selected if the Axis has played card 28a East Wind Rain.

 Example: A Surface Fleet in the On Station Box of a Naval Zone could be returned to the Axis Force Pool without going through the Delay Box.
- SNLF Landing: Place one SNLF Beachhead-0 marker in any All-Sea hex on the map. This placement cannot be contested.
 Clarification: This placement cannot be contested, nor is it restricted by weather. You may place an SNLF Beachhead-0

restricted by weather. You may place an SNLF Beachhead-0 marker in the South China Sea or Bay of Bengal during a North Monsoon Mud turn.

Design Note: Be sure to remember the Special SNLF Landing rules (4.1.3.1). They can be a powerful tool!

- Surprise Troop Movement: The Axis faction may move one single-step ground unit from any hex in Japan or a Japanese Dependent to any other hex in Japan or a Japanese Dependent. The hex being moved to cannot contain an enemy unit or marker.
 - Clarification: Just pick up and the unit and put it where you want it. Don't worry about movement allowances, supply status, EZOCs, or the lack of Troop Convoy markers and <u>Open Ports</u>.
- *Totsugeki!*: Place one Totsugeki marker in a hex anywhere on the map (14.42).

Clarification: Unlike Blitz markers, you never roll on the Cabinet Crisis Table for placing one of these markers in a location contrary to the current Japanese Government.

The Axis faction may select any combination of Z Actions that it wishes, with the restriction that a particular Z Action may not be selected more than *three* times per Operation Z Political Event.

Clarification: Widespread Attacks (15.37) do not count against this limit. In addition, the Axis faction may place a Blitz marker from its option card or use its support units to place regular Beachhead markers.

15.30 Political Option

The faction that received this event may do *one* of the following:

- \(\Delta \text{Chinese Incident:}\) Change this result to \(\text{Chinese Incident} \) (15.8). Perform the new event immediately.
- Declare War: Select one Neutral Country and activate it. If an Allied player picks this option, the Neutral Country activates as an Axis Country. If the Axis faction picks this option, the Neutral Country activates as an Allied Country. See 13.5 to determine which Allied faction is responsible for the Country.

Clarification: This choice may end a Policy (13.6.1.2).

- Eastern Peace Talks: Increase or reduce a Truce marker in any one Soviet Posture Box by one level (13.6.2.3). Then, place Negotiation markers in all Soviet Posture Boxes that do not already have a Truce or Policy marker. Important: The Western faction cannot select this event.
- *Military Failure:* Cause another faction to suffer a Failure (15.15). The faction picking this option decides the faction and type of Failure.
- Neutrals Consider Options: Select one Neutral Country and apply the Influence Political Event (15.19) to it.
- \(\triangle War \) in Asia: Select a Policy marker in one of the Russian,
 Communist Chinese, or Nationalist Chinese Posture Boxes and
 end that Policy (13.6.1.2). Important: The Western faction
 cannot select this option.
- \(\triangle War \) in the Pacific: Select a Policy marker in one of the British or US Posture Boxes and end that Policy (13.6.1.2). Important: The Soviet faction cannot select this option.
- Western Peace Talks: Increase or reduce a Truce marker in any one Western Posture Box by one level (13.6.2.3). Then, place Negotiation markers in all Western Posture Boxes that do not already have a Truce or Policy marker. Important: The Soviet faction cannot select this event.
- *Wider Involvement:* Select *one* friendly Minor Country with a Free Passage marker in its Capital and remove that marker.

△15.31 Power Shift

If the Japanese Government marker is in its Holding Box, the Axis faction *may* flip the marker over.

Example: If the marker is on its Navy side, the Axis faction may flip it to the Army side.

15.32 Production Success [Type]

 \triangle **The first time this event occurs:** Place the *Imperial Directive* card's associated *unit* in the Delay Box.

- Card 52 HQ [1G]
- Card 53 Scratch Convoy
- Card 54 Bomber [8]
- Card 55 Sub Fleet [6]

- Card 56 Interceptor [7]
- Card 57 CV Fleet [8]

△The second time this event occurs: Place the *Imperial Directive* card's associated *marker* in the Delay Box.

- Card 52 Chemical Weapons (14.8)
- Card 53 Convoy Strategy (14.10)
- Card 54 Fujiyama Bomber Production (14.17)
- Card 55 I-boat Strategy (14.19)
- Card 56 Jet Fighter Production (14.24)
- Card 57 Suicidal Raiders (14.41)

Design Note: First you get the prototypes, then comes mass production.

15.33 Project Success: A-bomb

If the US is not a TAC, the Western faction places one Atomic Devastation marker in a Land hex that is within nine hexes of a US <u>Air Base</u>. The hex cannot be in a Neutral Minor Country. This placement *cannot* be contested.

When placing an Atomic Devastation marker, the Western faction may select *one* enemy ground *unit* (regardless of size), Detachment, or Logistics marker in the placement hex and eliminate it. A unit or marker with a Delay Stripe is placed in the Delay Box; a unit without a Delay Stripe is returned to its Force Pool.

△15.34 Raiders Discovered

The faction that received this event must take one CV Fleet from its Force Pool and place it in the Delay Box. If there is no CV Fleet available in its Force Pool, it must select one support unit of any other type from its Force Pool and place that unit in the Delay Box instead.

Clarification: Do not place any support units in the Naval Warfare Delay Box for this event, even if they are naval support units.

15.35 Successful Challenge [Country]

The Allied faction that received this event may do *one* of the following:

- Attack!: Place one Blitz marker in its next Support Segment.
- Declare War: Select one Neutral Country and activate it as an Axis Country.
- \(\triangle End a Policy: \) End a Policy (13.6.1.2) in the Posture Box of the Country named on the card. **Exception:** The *Neutrality* Policy *cannot* be ended.

Clarification: Remember when you end a Policy, you remove all of that Policy's markers that are in Posture boxes. So if you get a Successful Challenge: Nationalist China result, and Nationalist China and Communist China have the same Policy, this event applies to both Posture Boxes.

△15.36 Successful Improvements

The faction that rolled this event may do one of the following:

- Add that faction's Chinese Interceptor unit to the game by placing it in the Delay Box.
- Flip that faction's Minor Country Prod marker to its +2 side and leave it in the Strategic Warfare Box.

△15.37 Widespread Attacks

The Axis faction may immediately perform two Operation Z Actions (15.29).

Clarification: These Z Actions are "bonus actions" on top of those the Axis faction will receive when it performs the Operation Z Political Event in the Political Events Segment. They do not count against the three action limit described in 15.29.

16. Conditional Events

16.1 Axis Permanent Conditional Events

Check the following in the order listed, *before* performing any Conditional Event on the Axis Current Card.

16.1.1 Allied Minor Country Conquest

If Axis ground units occupy all City and Partisan Base hexes in an active Allied Minor Country, that Country is *conquered*. It remains an Allied Country aligned with its owning faction, but its status is now a *Conquered Country*. **Exceptions:** Kansu and Kiangsu are special cases; see below.

A Country can be conquered any number of times.

For the Country that is conquered, immediately do the following:

Step 1: Remove all of the conquered Minor Country's support units and fortress units (including port-a-fort units) from the game.

Step 2: Remove all of its remaining counters and place them in the Conquered Minor Countries Box of the Allied faction's Force Pool.

Step 3: If there is a Ceded Land marker in the Axis Force Pool corresponding to an area within that Country, place the marker in the Ceded Lands Box.

Example: Japan conquers Hopeh, a Western Minor Country. The players remove the Hopeh 0-1-0 port-a-fort unit from the game and place its other units in the Western Conquered Minors Box. The Japanese Inner Mongolia Ceded Land marker is in the Axis Force Pool, so it is placed in the Ceded Lands Box. Inner Mongolia is now a Japanese Dependent.

 \triangle **Kansu and Kiangsu:** These two Minor Countries are exempt from this event; they *cannot* be conquered.

Design Note: Although these two countries can't be conquered, they can be subdued through the Axis Forced Settlement Conditional Event (16.2.5) or an Allied Surrender Conditional Event (16.4.2 and 16.6.1). Also, if the Axis faction can occupy all of cities belonging to one of these minors, that will deny their remaining units access to supply sources and reinforcement locations.

16.1.2 Axis Minor Country Occupation

 Δ If an Axis Minor Country *or* any of its Dependents contains a Japanese multi-step ground unit or any ground unit belonging to a *different* Axis Country, it is considered *under Occupation*. A country can be under Occupation any number of times throughout the game.

Exceptions:

- One-step Exp units, regardless of nationality, do not cause Occupation.
- An Axis multi-national unit does not cause Occupation if the Minor Country unit in that multi-national unit's Holding Box would be considered in its own Country or Dependent.

Example: The Axis AEx HQ unit Holding Box contains a Hopeh infantry unit, so the AEx HQ does not cause the occupation of Hopeh. It would do so for other Axis Minor Countries.

 \(\Delta \) An Axis Minor Country that contains a No Occupation marker is not subject to Occupation.

 \(\Delta \) If the Showa Restoration marker is in the Strategic Warfare
 Box, an Axis Minor Country is not under Occupation unless
 there are two or more Japanese multi-step units or any ground
 unit belonging to a different Axis Country.

Clarification: So an Axis Minor Country can now have one Japanese multi-step unit in it without causing Occupation. An HO is usually a good choice.

Effects: If an Axis Minor Country is under Occupation, the Axis faction must do *one* of the following:

- Perform an Emergency Breakdown of all units in that Country causing Occupation (2.3.4). This option can only be selected if the Minor Country would no longer be considered to be under Occupation after performing all breakdowns.
- Intern all units in that Country causing Occupation (16.7). This option can only be selected if the units can trace an *overland supply* line at the moment of internment (10.2).
- Remove all units belonging to the Minor Country under Occupation. Place those units with a Delay Stripe in the Delay Box; place all others in the Axis Force Pool.

Design Note: This simulates the political costs of imposing foreign forces on Japan's allies. Note that Occupied Minor Countries remain Axis allies – albeit unhappy ones.

△16.1.3 Manchukuo Garrison Check

If Russia's Posture is not Neutrality: Ignore this event.

If Russia's Posture is Neutrality: The Axis faction must check each Japanese Dependent that shares a border with a Soviet Country and make sure its Dependent has a sufficient Border Defense, as defined below.

Border Defense Requirements: Within the Japanese Dependent being checked, each Road or Rail hex that shares a border with a Soviet Country must contain at least two Japanese ground unit steps. *Exception:* If there are Allied ground units anywhere in a Japanese Dependent being checked, Manchukuo Garrison requirements are lifted for *all* Japanese Dependents.

Clarification: It doesn't matter whether the two ground unit steps are a pair of one-step units or a single two-step unit.

Example: Inner Mongolia is a Japanese Dependent and Mongolia is a Soviet Minor Country. The Axis faction must keep two steps in Kalgan (w5322) unless there is an Allied ground unit in Inner Mongolia, Manchukuo or Korea.

Unmet Border Defense Requirements: If these conditions are not met, the *Soviet* faction must immediately redeploy sufficient Japanese non-fortress ground unit steps from any hex(es) on the map to satisfy the rule. The Soviet faction selects the unit or units and places them in the necessary border hexes. The Soviet faction may force the Axis faction to break down any units it wishes to fulfill this event. The Soviet faction cannot use this event to redeploy *more* steps than are necessary, nor can it redeploy Japanese ground units that are necessary to fulfill a Garrison Check elsewhere.

Example: The Axis faction checks its garrison in Korea and discovers it has overlooked hex e5201, a rail hex that border the Soviet Union. The Soviet faction can select any Japanese non-fortress steps on the map other than those that are absolutely necessary for Border Defense elsewhere. It looks to Indochina where the Axis faction has a 3-step HQ. The Soviet faction can force the HQ unit to break down (going to the Delay Box) and relocate two of its three steps to the border hex in Korea.

△16.1.4 British Neutrality Pact Check

If Britain's Posture is Neutrality: Ignore this event.

If Britain's Posture is not Neutrality: Take the *British Neutrality Pact* support unit from the Axis Conditional Events Box and place it in the Delay Box.

△16.1.5 Cabinet Dissolution

If the Japanese Government marker is in its Holding Box, the Axis Faction may place it in the Delay Box.

Design Note: You might do this if you're unhappy with the status of your current Government. However, there's no guarantee it will come back the way you want it to, and you might end up needing it in the meantime.

16.1.6 Internment

Check to see if *any* units belonging to *any* faction are currently in territory that forces their *internment*. See 16.7.

16.2 Axis Option Card Conditional Events

These events are performed *after* all Axis Permanent Conditional Events are checked.

△16.2.1 Army Program

This event can occur only once per game.

Take the *Army Program* Air Force unit from the Axis Conditional Events Box and place it in the Delay Box.

△16.2.2 Economic Program

This event can only occur once per game.

Take the *Economic Program* Logistics marker from the Axis Conditional Events Box and place it in the Delay Box.

△16.2.3 Navy Program

This event can occur only once per game.

Take the *Navy Program* Surface Fleet unit from the Axis Conditional Events Box and place them in the Delay Box.

△16.2.4 Political Program

This event can occur only once per game.

Take the *Political Program* colonial infantry units and the Quit India marker from the Axis Conditional Events Box and place them in the Delay Box. **Exception:** If a Japanese ground unit occupies a hex in Ceylon or India at the time this event is triggered, remove the Quit India marker from the game.

△16.2.5 Forced Settlement

This event can occur only once per game.

This event affects only the Country or Countries named on the Axis *Settlement* card played. That Country is said to be a *Settlement Affected Country* (SAC). In addition,

- If the US is the SAC, all active and conquered non-Chinese Western Minor Countries are also considered to be SACs.
- If Russia is the SAC, all *active and conquered non-Chinese* Soviet Minor Countries are considered to be SACs.
- If Nationalist China is the SAC, all active and conquered Western Chinese Countries are SACs.
- If Communist China is the SAC, all *active and conquered* Soviet Chinese Countries are SACs.

The Settlement to be imposed depends on how many Allied Strategic Hexes in a SAC or its Dependents are under Axis Control:

If one or two Allied Strategic Hexes in a SAC or its Dependents are under Axis Control:

Step 1: Place a Truce marker of the Axis faction's choice in the SAC's Posture Box(es).

Step 2: If the Japanese Government marker is in its Holding Box, place it in the Delay Box.

If three or more Allied Strategic Hexes in an SAC or its Dependents are under Axis <u>Control</u>:

Step 1: Place a Surrender Policy marker in the SAC's Posture Box(es), then place the SAC's Enforced Peace marker one year ahead on the Turn Track.

Example: If a Settlement is imposed on Russia during the July-Aug 1940 Turn, you would place the Russian Enforced Peace marker in the July-Aug 1941 Turn Box.

Step 2: If the Japanese Government marker is in its Holding Box, place it in the Delay Box.

Step 3: Remove all SAC Ceded Land markers from the Ceded Lands Box; those areas are returned to their original Countries. If Mongolia is re-created as a result of this, it becomes an Axis Minor Country; place its units in the Axis Force Pool.

Step 4: If there is a supplied Japanese ground unit in the hex listed below, the associated Region or Dependent becomes a Japanese Dependent. Place the appropriate Japanese Dependent markers in the Ceded Lands Box. Check only those hexes listed under the SAC.

Britain:

- Brunei (w3321) Sarawak
- Hong Kong (w4222) Hong Kong
- Port Moresby (e2606) Papua
- Rabaul (e2808) Solomon Islands
- Rangoon (w4015) Burma
- Singapore (w3218) Malaya

Communist China or Nationalist China:

- Kalgan (w5322) Inner Mongolia (ceded from Hopeh)
- Haikou (w4120) Hainan (ceded from Kiangsu)

Clarification: Do not perform this if the Chinese Country is not an SAC. For example, if Nationalist China is the SAC and Hopeh is an active Communist China minor country, Inner Mongolia would not become a Japanese Dependent.

Russia:

- Okha (e5806) Sakhalin
- Blagoveshchensk (w5727) Amur
- Chita (w5824) Trans-Baikal
- Irkutsk (w5817) Siberia
- Petropavlovsk (e5810) Kamchatka
- Vladivostok (e5301) Primorye

US and Western Minors:

- Dutch Harbor (e5720) Aleutian Islands
- Guam (e3806) Guam
- Manila (w3824) The Philippines
- Midway (e4519) Midway
- Saigon (w3619) Indochina
- Wake (e4113) Wake

Step 5: If the Axis faction <u>controls</u> all Cities in Kansu and *Communist China* is the SAC, then Kansu becomes a Japanese Dependent. Place the Kansu Japanese Dependent marker in the Ceded Lands Box.

If the Axis faction <u>controls</u> all Cities in Kiangsu and *Nationalist China* is the SAC, then Kiangsu becomes a Japanese Dependent. Place the Kiangsu Japanese Dependent marker in the Ceded Lands Box.

Step 6: Intern all Axis units and markers in an active SAC or its Dependents.

Clarification: Do not intern those units inside a Japanese Dependent created in Step 2 above, or units inside a conquered Allied Minor Country.

Step 7: Intern all SAC units and markers outside its Home Country or Dependents.

Step 8: Intern all non-SAC Allied units and markers inside the SAC or its Dependents.

Step 9: The Axis faction may select one Neutral or Friendly Minor Country and apply the Influence Political Event (15.19) to it.

△16.2.6 Japanese Concessions

This event can occur only *once* per game. It affects only the Country (or Countries) named on the Axis *Settlement* card played. That Country is said to be a *Settlement Affected Country* (SAC).

If the US is the SAC, all *active* Western Minor Countries are also considered to be SACs. If Russia is the SAC, all *active* Soviet Minor Countries are considered to be SACs. If Nationalist China is the SAC, all *active* Western Chinese Countries are SACs. If Communist China is the SAC, all *active* Soviet Chinese Countries are SACs.

Step 1: Place a Surrender Policy marker in the SAC's Posture Box, then place the SAC's Enforced Peace marker one year ahead on the Turn Track.

Step 2: Place the Japanese Government marker one year ahead on the Turn Track.

Clarification: Do this even if the Government marker is not in its Holding Box.

Step 3: Remove *all* Japanese Ceded Land markers from the Ceded Lands Box; those areas are returned to their original Countries.

Clarification: Do this even if the Ceded Land is not a Region that belongs to the SAC.

Step 4: If there is a *supplied* SAC ground unit in the hex listed below, the associated Region or Dependent becomes a SAC Dependent or Ceded Region. Place the appropriate Allied Ceded Land marker in the Ceded Lands Box. Check only those hexes listed under the SAC.

Britain:

- Eniwetok (e3612) Marshall Islands
- Okinawa (w4427) Okinawa
- Palau (e3402) Western Caroline Islands
- Taihoku (w4324) Formosa
- Truk (e3408) Eastern Caroline Islands

Communist China and/or Nationalist China:

- Chengteh (w5224) Jehol (ceded to Hopeh)
- Shanghai (w4725) Shanghai (ceded to Kiangsu)

Clarification: Do not perform this if the Chinese Country is not an SAC.

Russia:

- Harbin (w5427) Kirin
- Keijo (w5027) Korea
- Mukden (w5226) Liaoning
- Toyohara (e5605) Karafuto
- Tsitsihar (w5226) Heilungkiang

US and Western Minors:

- Iwo Jima (e4304) Iwo Jima
- Eniwetok (e3612) Marshall Islands
- Palau (e3402) Western Caroline Islands
- Truk (e3408) Eastern Caroline Islands
- Saipan (e3906) Saipan

Step 5: If *no* Ceded Land marker was placed in Step 4, the Axis faction *must* select *one* Region or Dependent from the proper list in Step 4 and cede it to the Allied faction. Place the appropriate Allied marker in the Ceded Lands Box.

Step 6: Intern all *Axis* units and markers in the SAC.

Step 7: Intern all SAC units and markers outside its Home Country or Dependents.

Clarification: Do not intern those units inside a SAC Dependent or Ceded Land created in Step 2.

Step 8: Intern all non-SAC *Allied* units and markers inside the SAC or its Dependents.

16.3 Western Permanent Conditional Events

Check the following in the order listed, *before* performing any Conditional Event on the Western Current Card.

16.3.1 Conquered Western Minor Country Reactivation

The Western faction may reactivate a Conquered Western Country if that Country's *Capital* hex does not contain an enemy unit, Detachment, or Logistics marker.

The Western faction may also reactivate a Conquered *Allied* Country if that Country contains a Western Partisan Base marker and there is not an enemy unit, Detachment, or Logistics marker in the same hex. If the Conquered Allied Minor Country belongs to the Soviet faction, the Western faction immediately takes control of the Minor Country and temporarily places its units in the Western Conquered Minor Countries Box (until it performs the two steps below).

A country can be re-activated any number of times in a game. Also, any number of countries can be re-activated in a single turn.

For the country that is re-activated, immediately do the following.

Step 1: Place its 0-1-2 *Res* infantry unit on the Country's unoccupied Capital or Partisan Base marker.

Step 2: Remove all of its remaining units from the Western Conquered Minor Countries Box. Place those units without a Delay Stripe in the Western Force Pool. Place units *with* a Delay Stripe in the Delay Box.

Reactivation Restriction: A Minor Country cannot be reactivated as a Western Minor if there is a Policy marker in its corresponding Posture Box

16.3.2 Axis or Soviet Minor Country Liberation

If Western ground units occupy all City and Partisan Base hexes of an *Axis* or *Soviet* Minor Country, that country is *liberated*. A country can be liberated any number of times.

For the country that is liberated, immediately do the following.

Step 1: Remove all of its support units and fortress units (including port-a-fort units) from the game.

Step 2: Remove all of its remaining counters. Place those counters with a Delay Stripe in the Delay Box. Place counters *without* a Delay Stripe in the *Western* Force Pool. The Country becomes a Western Minor Country.

△16.3.3 US Far Eastern Forces

This event can occur only once per game.

This event occurs if the US Posture is War. When that occurs, take the *US Far Eastern Forces* units from the Western Conditional Events Box and place them in the Delay Box.

△16.3.4 British Far Eastern Forces

This event can occur only once per game.

This event occurs if Britain's Posture is War. When that occurs, take the *British Far Eastern Forces* units from the Western Conditional Events Box and place them in the Delay Box.

△16.3.5 French Response

This event can occur only once per game.

If the US Posture is War *and* France is a Neutral Country, the Western faction *may* activate France as a Western Minor Country.

*16.3.6 European Reserves

Each of these events can occur only once per game.

If Britain's Posture is War or European Limited War is in effect: Place the Western Limited War Reserves marker in the Delay Box.

If European Total War is in effect: Place the Western Total War Reserves marker in the Delay Box.

16.3.7 Reduced US Impact

Δ If Axis ground units occupy at least *three* of the following hexes, place the Reduced US Impact marker in the Strategic Warfare Box: Dutch Harbor (e5720), Honolulu (e4226), Port Moresby (e2606), Manila (w3824), Noumea (e1913), and Tutuila (e2221).

If Axis ground units occupy less than *three* of these hexes *and* the Reduced US Impact marker is in the Strategic Warfare Box, remove it and set it aside for possible future use.

Clarification: These hexes are marked on the map with small white stars to remind you of their importance.

Design Note: Without a line of communication to Australia or the Philippines, American influence in the Pacific would have been seriously diminished.

△16.3.8 The West Rises

The Western faction must perform these steps in order:

Step 1: Ignore this step if the Western Current Card is card 22 *Nationalist Chinese Surrender* or the Axis Current Card is card 37c *Nationalist Chinese Settlement.* Otherwise, check each condition below separately, in order:

- If Kiangsu has become a Japanese Dependent and a City in Kiangsu does not contain a Japanese unit, Detachment, or Logistics marker: The Western faction may remove the Surrender marker from Nationalist China's Posture Box and change Nationalist China's Posture to War.
- If Nationalist China's Posture is War: Remove the Kiangsu Japanese Dependent marker from the Ceded Lands Box.

Step 2: Ignore this step if the Western Current Card is card 29 *Commonwealth Surrender* or the Axis Current Card is card 37a *British Settlement*. Otherwise, check each condition below separately, in order:

- If any City in a formerly British Mandate Dependent does not contain a Japanese unit, Detachment, or Logistics marker:

 The Western faction may remove the Surrender marker from Britain's Posture Box and change Britain's Posture to War.
- If Britain's Posture is War: Remove all British Mandate Japanese Dependent markers from the Ceded Lands Box.

Clarification: As a reminder, the possible British Mandate Dependents are Burma, Hong Kong, Malaya, Papua, Sarawak, and Solomon Islands. **Step 3:** Ignore this step if the Western Current Card is card 37 *US Surrender* or the Axis Current Card is card 37e *US Settlement*. Otherwise, check each condition below separately, in order:

- If any City in a formerly US Minor Mandate Dependent does not contain a Japanese unit, Detachment, or Logistics marker: The Western faction may remove the Surrender marker from the US/Western Minors Posture Box and change the US/Western Minor Posture to War.
- If the US/Western Minor Posture is War: Remove all US Mandate Japanese Dependent markers from the Ceded Lands Box.

Clarification: As a reminder, the possible US Mandate Dependents are Aleutian Islands, Guam, Midway, the Philippines and Wake.

Design Note: Following a Western surrender or settlement, the Axis will have to garrison any Dependents it gains in the peace treaty. If that garrison falls below the amount required, then the surrendered Country may go back to war and any Mandate Dependents gained in the treaty will be returned to their original owner.

△16.3.9 Aid to Nationalist China

The Western faction must perform these steps in order:

Step 1: If the Western Aid to China marker is in an Allied Conditional Events box, the Western faction *may* place it in the Delay Box or remove it from the game.

Step 2: If any Aid to China marker is in the Western Conditional Events Box and Nationalist China has a Posture of War, the Western faction may roll on the Aid Table once for *each* Aid to China marker. Any steps received from the Table must be taken as Nationalist Chinese steps and placed per Placing Replacements (1.3.4).

△16.3.10 Lend-Lease to Britain

The Western faction must perform these steps in order:

Step 1: If the Western Lend-Lease marker is in an Allied Conditional Events box, the Western faction *may* place it in the Delay Box or remove it from the game.

Step 2: If the Western Lend-Lease marker is in the Western Conditional Events Box and Britain has a Posture of War, the Western faction may roll on the Lend-Lease Table. Any steps received from the Table must be taken as British steps and placed per Placing Replacements (1.3.4).

16.3.11 Internment

Check to see if *any* units belonging to *any* faction are currently in territory that forces their *internment*. See 16.7.

16.4 Western Option Card Conditional Events

These events are performed *after* all Western Permanent Conditional Events are checked.

△16.4.1 British Surrender

This event can occur only once per game.

Step 1: Place a Surrender Policy marker in the British Posture Box, then place the British Enforced Peace marker one year ahead on the Turn Track

Step 2: Remove all British Ceded Land markers from the Ceded Lands Box; those areas are returned to being Japanese Dependents.

Step 3: If there is a *supplied* Japanese ground unit in the hex listed below, the associated British Dependent becomes a Japanese Dependent. Place the appropriate Japanese Dependent markers in the Ceded Lands Box:

- Brunei (w3321) Sarawak
- Hong Kong (w4222) Hong Kong
- Port Moresby (e2606) Papua
- Rabaul (e2808) Solomon Islands
- Rangoon (w4015) Burma
- Singapore (w3218) Malaya

Step 4: If *no* Dependent marker was placed in Step 3, the *Axis* faction may select *one* Region from the list in Step 3 and force the Western faction to cede it to the Axis faction. Place the appropriate Japanese Dependent marker in the Ceded Lands Box.

Step 5: Intern all *Axis* units and markers in any British Dependents.

Clarification: Do not intern those units inside a Japanese Dependent created in Step 2 above.

Step 6: Intern all British units and markers outside British Dependents.

Step 7: Intern all other *Allied* units and markers inside British Dependents.

Step 8: The Axis faction may select one Neutral or Friendly Minor Country and apply the Influence Political Event (15.19) to it.

△16.4.2 Nationalist Chinese Surrender

This event can occur only once per game.

Step 1: Place a Surrender Policy marker in the Nationalist China Posture Box, then place the Nationalist Chinese Enforced Peace marker one year ahead on the Turn Track.

Step 2: Remove all Chinese Ceded Land markers from the Ceded Lands Box; those Regions are returned to being Japanese Dependents.

Step 3: Place the *Inner Mongolia* and *Hainan* Japanese Dependent markers in the Ceded Lands Box. These Regions are now Japanese Dependents.

Clarification: Perform Steps 2 and 3 even if Hopeh and Kiangsu are not Nationalist Chinese countries.

Step 4: Any *active* Western Chinese Minor Country *except Kiangsu* that contains a Japanese unit or marker immediately collapses and becomes a Conquered Country. Remove all its units with Delay Stripes from the game. Then remove all of its remaining counters and place them in the Western Conquered Minor Country Box.

Step 5: If Kiangsu contains a Japanese unit or marker, it becomes a Japanese Dependent. Remove all Kiangsu units with Delay Stripes from the game. Then remove all remaining Kiangsu units and place them in the *Western Force Pool*. Place the Kiangsu Japanese Dependent marker in the Ceded Lands Box.

Step 6: Intern all *Nationalist Chinese* units and markers outside their Home Countries.

Step 7: Intern all other *Allied* units and markers inside *active* Nationalist Chinese Countries.

Step 8: The Axis faction may select one Neutral or Friendly Minor Country and apply the Influence Political Event (15.19) to it.

△16.4.3 US Surrender

This event can occur only *once* per game.

Step 1: Place a Surrender Policy marker in the US and Western Minors Posture Box, then place the US Enforced Peace marker one year ahead on the Turn Track.

Step 2: Remove all US Ceded Land markers from the Ceded Lands Box; those areas are returned to being Japanese Dependents.

Step 3: If there is a *supplied* Japanese ground unit in the hex listed below, the associated US or French Dependent becomes a Japanese Dependent. Place the appropriate Japanese Dependent markers in the Ceded Lands Box:

- Dutch Harbor (e5720) Aleutian Islands
- Guam (e3806) Guam
- Manila (w3824) The Philippines
- Midway (e4519) Midway
- Saigon (w3619) Indochina
- Wake (e4113) Wake

Step 4: If *no* Dependent marker was placed in Step 3, the *Axis* faction may select *one* Region from the list in Step 3 and force the Western faction to cede it to the Axis faction. Place the appropriate Japanese Dependent marker in the Ceded Lands Box.

Step 5: Intern all *Axis* units and markers in any US Dependents, *active* Western Minor Countries, or Dependents of active Western Minor Countries.

Clarification: Do not intern those units inside a Japanese Dependent created in Step 2 above, or units inside a conquered Allied country.

Step 6: Intern all *US* and active, non-Chinese *Western Minor Country* units and markers outside remaining US Dependents or their Home Countries, respectively.

Step 7: Intern all other *Allied* units and markers inside remaining US Dependents or active, non-Chinese Western Minor Countries.

Step 8: The Axis faction may select one Neutral or Friendly Country and apply the Influence Political Event (15.19) to it.

16.4.4 Colonial Liberation

This event can occur only once per game.

If Australia, France, India, Indochina, NEI, New Zealand, or the Philippines is an Axis or Soviet Country, *and* a supplied US ground unit occupies a City within the selected Country or one of its Dependents, remove all of the selected Country's remaining counters. Place those with a Delay Stripe in the Delay Box. Place those without a Delay Stripe in the *Western* Force Pool. The Minor Country is now a Western Minor Country.

16.4.5 Operation Avalanche

This event can occur only once per game.

The Western faction selects *one* Axis or Soviet Minor Country. If a supplied US ground unit occupies a City within the selected Country, the following steps are performed:

Step 1: Remove all its support units and fortress units (including porta-fort units) from the game.

Step 2: Remove all of the selected Country's remaining counters. Place those with a Delay Stripe in the Delay Box. Place those *without* a Delay Stripe in its faction's Force Pool. The Minor Country remains aligned to its *current* faction.

Step 3: If the Country is an Axis Country, place a No Occupation marker in its capital (14.34).

16.5 Soviet Permanent Conditional Events

Check the following in the order listed, *before* performing any Conditional Event on the Soviet Current Card.

16.5.1 Conquered Soviet Minor Country Reactivation

The Soviet faction may reactivate a Conquered Soviet Country if that Country's *Capital* hex does not contain an enemy unit, Detachment, or Logistics marker.

The Soviet faction may also reactivate a Conquered *Allied* Country if that Country contains a Soviet Partisan Base marker and there is not an enemy unit, Detachment, or Logistics marker in the same hex. If

the Conquered Allied Minor Country belongs to the Western faction, the Soviet faction immediately takes control of the Minor Country and temporarily places its units in the Soviet Conquered Minor Countries Box (until it performs the two steps below).

A country can be re-activated any number of times in a game. Also, any number of countries can be re-activated in a single turn.

For the country that is re-activated, immediately do the following.

Step 1: Place its 0-1-2 *Res* infantry unit on the Country's unoccupied Capital or Partisan Base marker.

Step 2: Remove all of its remaining units from the Soviet Conquered Minor Countries Box. Place those units without a Delay Stripe in the Soviet Force Pool. Place units *with* a Delay Stripe in the Delay Box.

Reactivation Restriction: A Minor Country cannot be reactivated as a Soviet Minor if there is a Policy marker in its corresponding Posture Box.

16.5.2 Axis or Western Minor Country Liberation

If Soviet ground units occupy all City and Partisan Base hexes in an Axis or Western Minor Country, that country is *liberated*. A country can be liberated any number of times.

For the country that is liberated, immediately do the following.

Step 1: Remove all of its support units and fortress units (including port-a-fort units) from the game.

Step 2: Remove all of its remaining counters. Place those counters with a Delay Stripe in the Delay Box. Place counters *without* a Delay Stripe in the *Soviet* Force Pool. The Country becomes a Soviet Minor Country.

Step 3: If there is a Ceded Land marker in the Soviet Force Pool corresponding to an area within that Country, place the marker in the Ceded Lands Box.

△16.5.3 Russian Far Eastern Forces

This event can occur only once per game.

This event occurs if Russia's Posture is War. Take the *Far Eastern Forces* units from the Soviet Conditional Events Box and place them in the Delay Box.

*16.5.4 European Reserves

Each of these events can occur only once per game.

If Russia's Posture is War or European Limited War is in effect: Place the Russian Limited War Reserves marker in the Delay Box.

If European Total War is in effect: Place the Russian Total War Reserves marker in the Delay Box.

△16.5.5 The East Rises

The Soviet faction must perform these steps in order:

Step 1: Ignore this step if the Soviet Current Card is card 29 *Communist Chinese Surrender* or the Axis Current Card is card 37b *Communist Chinese Settlement.* Otherwise, check each condition below separately, in order:

- If Kansu has become a Japanese Dependent and a City in Kansu does not contain a Japanese unit, Detachment, or Logistics marker: The Soviet faction may remove the Surrender marker from Communist China's Posture Box and change Communist China's Posture to War.
- If Communist China's Posture is War: Remove the Kansu Japanese Dependent marker from the Ceded Lands Box.

Step 2: Ignore this step if the Soviet Current Card is card 25 *Russian Surrender* or the Axis Current Card is card 37d *Russian Settlement*.

Otherwise, check each condition below separately, in order:

- If any City in a formerly Russian Far East Region does not contain a Japanese unit, Detachment, or Logistics marker: The Soviet faction may remove the Surrender marker from Russia's Posture Box and change Russia's Posture to War.
- If Russia's Posture is War: Remove all Russian Far East Region Japanese Dependent markers from the Ceded Lands Box

Clarification: As a reminder, the Russian Far East Regions are Amur, Kamchatka, Mongolia, Primorye, Sakhalin, Siberia, and Trans-Raikal

△16.5.6 Aid to Communist China

The Soviet faction must perform these steps in order:

Step 1: If the Soviet Aid to China marker is in an Allied Conditional Events box, the Soviet faction *may* place it in the Delay Box or remove it from the game.

Step 2: If any Aid to China marker is in the Soviet Conditional Events Box and Communist China has a Posture of War, the Soviet faction may roll on the Aid Table once for each Aid to China marker. Any steps received from the Table must be taken as Communist Chinese steps and placed per Placing Replacements (1.3.4).

△16.5.7 Lend-Lease to Russia

If the Western Lend-Lease marker is in the Soviet Conditional Events Box and Russia has a Posture of War, the Soviet faction may roll on the Lend-Lease Table. Any steps received from the Table must be taken as Soviet steps and placed per Placing Replacements (1.3.4).

16.5.8 Internment

Check to see if *any* units belonging to *any* faction are currently in territory that forces their *internment*. See 16.7.

16.6 Soviet Option Card Conditional Events

These events are performed *after* all Soviet Permanent Conditional Events are checked.

△16.6.1 Communist Chinese Surrender

This event can occur only once per game.

Step 1: Place a Surrender Policy marker in the Communist China Posture Box, then place the Communist Chinese Enforced Peace marker one year ahead on the Turn Track.

Step 2: Remove all Chinese Ceded Land markers from the Ceded Lands Box; those Regions are returned to being Japanese Dependents.

Step 3: Place the *Inner Mongolia* and *Hainan* Japanese Dependent markers in the Ceded Lands Box. These Regions are now Japanese Dependents.

Clarification: Perform Steps 2 and 3 even if Hopeh and Kiangsu are not Communist Chinese countries.

Step 4: Any *active* Soviet Chinese Minor Country *except Kansu* that contains a Japanese unit or marker immediately collapses and becomes a Conquered Country. Remove all its units with Delay Stripes from the game. Then remove all of its remaining counters and place them in the Soviet Conquered Minor Country Box.

Step 5: If Kansu contains a Japanese unit or marker, it becomes a Japanese Dependent. Remove all Kansu units with Delay Stripes from the game. Then remove all remaining Kansu units and place them in the *Soviet Force Pool*. Place the Kansu Japanese Dependent marker in the Ceded Lands Box.

Step 6: Intern all *Communist Chinese* units and markers outside their Home Countries.

Step 7: Intern all other *Allied* units and markers inside *active* Communist Chinese Countries.

Step 8: The Axis faction may select one Neutral or Friendly Minor Country and apply the Influence Political Event (15.19) to it.

△16.6.2 Russian Surrender

This event can occur only *once* per game.

Step 1: Place a Surrender Policy marker in Russia's Posture Box, then place the Russian Enforced Peace marker one year ahead on the Turn Track.

Clarification: Do not place any Policy marker in the Soviet Minors Posture Box.

Step 2: Remove all Russian Ceded Land markers from the Ceded Lands Box; those areas are returned to their original Countries. If Mongolia or Tannu Tuva is re-created as a result of this, that country becomes an Axis Minor Country; place its units in the Axis Force Pool

Step 3: If there is a *supplied* Japanese ground unit in the hex listed below, the associated Far East Region becomes a Japanese Dependent. Place the appropriate Japanese Dependent markers in the Ceded Lands Box:

- Okha (e5806) Sakhalin
- Blagoveshchensk (w5727) Amur
- Chita (w5824) Trans-Baikal
- Irkutsk (w5821) Siberia
- Petropavlovsk (e5810) Kamchatka (including Komandorski)
- Vladivostok (e5301) Primorye

Step 4: If *no* Dependent marker was placed in Step 3, the *Axis* faction may select *one* Region from the list in Step 3 and force the Soviet faction to cede it to the Axis faction. Place the appropriate Japanese Dependent marker in the Ceded Lands Box.

Step 5: Intern all *Axis* units and markers in Russia or Russian Dependents.

Clarification: Do not intern those units inside a Japanese Dependent created in Step 2 above, or units inside a Soviet Minor Country.

Step 6: Intern all *Russian* units and markers outside Russia or Russian Dependents.

Step 7: Intern all other *Allied* units and markers inside Russia or Russian Dependents.

Step 8: The Axis faction may select one Neutral or Friendly Country and apply the Influence Political Event (15.19) to it.

16.7 Internment & Repatriation

Axis counters: An Axis counter is interned under any of the following conditions:

- It is in a hex in a Neutral Country.
- It is in a hex belonging to a Policy Affected Country that is *not* a Conquered Country. The Axis player may choose to *not* intern the unit, and instead end the Policy it is violating. A Policy ending this way during Pre-War immediately starts Limited War (12.2)

Clarification: This is not considered to be "voluntarily" ending a Policy (13.6.1.2).

- \(\Delta\) It is a Minor Country unit or multi-national unit (13.8.3) in a
 hex in Japan or a Japanese Dependent. Exception: One-step Exp
 units are not interned.
- It is in a hex in an Axis Minor Country subject to Occupation (16.1.2.1) and the Axis faction chooses to intern the unit.

 ΔIt is an Axis Kwantung unit outside a Japanese Dependent, and any of Russia, Communist China, or Nationalist China are not a Policy Affected Country.

Allied counters: An Allied counter is interned under any of the following conditions:

- It is in a hex in a Neutral Country.
- It is a Policy Affected Country counter located in a hex in a Country it could not enter due to that policy.
- \(\Delta\) It is in a hex in a Japanese Dependent created when the Forced Settlement (16.2.5) or any Surrender (16.4.1, 16.4.2, 16.4.3, 16.6.1, 16.6.2) Conditional Event is applied.
- It is a Partisan Base marker in an enemy country.

Internment: Interned support units, Detachment, Logistics, and Partisan Base markers are placed in the Delay Box.

Interned ground units are placed on the back of their faction's Pending Card to await Repatriation.

Internment Restrictions:

• An interned ground unit must be a one-step unit. A multi-step unit that is to be interned must first break down (2.3.4) into one-step units. If a multi-step unit cannot finish its breakdown because there are not enough one-steps units available in a Force Pool, the unavailable steps are lost.

Example: A three-step unit breaks down into a one-step unit and a two-step unit. However, the owning player cannot break down the two-step unit because he has no one-step units left in his Force Pool. The two-step unit is eliminated and placed in the Delay Box (because it has a Delay Stripe).

 Fortress units (excluding Port-a-Fort units) cannot be interned; they are eliminated instead. Port-a-Fort units are flipped to their infantry sides and placed on the back of their faction's Pending Card.

Repatriation: When a Pending Card is revealed, any ground units on its back are placed per Placing Replacements (1.3.4).